

Mastercam

Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

(Metric version)

Mastercam Version 9 Mill Mastercam Version 9 Design © 2002 CNC Software, Inc.

Mastercam® Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial (Metric version)

Date: January 21, 2002 Copyright © 2002 CNC Software, Inc. - All rights reserved. First Printing: January 21, 2002 Software: Mastercam Mill Version 9, Mastercam Design Version 9

IMPORTANT NOTICE!

PLEASE READ THIS STATEMENT AND THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT COMPLETELY BEFORE USING THIS SOFTWARE.

BY CONTINUING TO USE THIS SOFTWARE, YOU (EITHER AN INDIVIDUAL OR A SINGLE ENTITY) INDICATE YOUR INTENTION TO BE BOUND BY AND ACCEPT THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THESE TERMS AND CONDITIONS YOU MAY NOT ACCESS OR OTHERWISE USE THIS SOFTWARE AND WILL IN FACT BE PROHIBITED FROM DOING SO. THIS COMPUTER SOFTWARE MAY BE USED ONLY PURSUANT TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS SET FORTH BELOW, AND SOLELY IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE ACCOMPANYING SECURITY MECHANISM (UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED IN THE "EXCEPTIONS TO SECURITY MECHANISM REQUIREMENTS" SECTION OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS) WHICH MUST BE PRESENT ON YOUR COMPUTER (OR NETWORK AS APPLICABLE) AT ALL TIMES DURING SUCH USE.

Software License

CNC Software, Inc. ("CNC") a Connecticut corporation with its principal place of business at 671 Old Post Rd., Tolland, Connecticut, 06084 hereby grants to you a non-exclusive, non-transferable license (the "License") to use (and, if applicable, to permit your authorized employees to use), solely in accordance with the terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement, this software program (the "Program") and any accompanying documentation (the "Documentation") solely for your internal business purposes and solely in conjunction with the accompanying hardware or software device, method, scheme or other security measure provided by CNC which allows a user to access the Program and prevents unauthorized access to the Program (the "Security Mechanism"). (The Program, any updates to the Program, and the Documentation shall hereinafter collectively be referred to as the "Software").

Restrictions

You may not use the Program without a Security Mechanism provided by CNC or CNC's suppliers. When CNC or CNC's suppliers provide you with a single-user Security Mechanism, the Program may only be used (in executable code form only) on a single computer to which the Security Mechanism is directly attached. In the event CNC or CNC's suppliers provide you with a multiple-user Security Mechanism for use over an internal network (a "Network Security Mechanism"), the Program may be used: (a) in executable code form only; (b) only on end-user computers that are connected to the internal network to which the Network Security Mechanism is attached; and (c) only by the number of users and accessed by the number of end-user computers for which licenses were purchased and as further allowed by the Network Security Mechanism to another only if the Security Mechanism is included in the transfer and is installed with the new computer.

You shall not: (a) copy (except as provided below), adapt, modify the Software; (b) publish, display, disclose or create a derivative work from the Software or any part thereof; (c) de-compile or translate, disassemble, create or attempt to create, by reverse engineering or otherwise, the source code form of the Program from the executable code of the Program; (d) remove any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software; (e) rent, lease, distribute or transfer all or any part of the Software to any person or entity without the prior written consent of CNC; (f) use the Software to provide outsourcing, service bureau, time sharing or other services to any third party; or (g) sublicense, assign, delegate or otherwise transfer your rights in the Software to Software License Agreement or any of the related rights or obligations for any reason without the prior written consent of CNC. You shall not circumvent, bypass, modify, reverse engineer, disassemble, disable, alter, enhance or replicate the function of the Security Mechanism in any manner whatsoever. Any attempt to do so shall result in automatic termination of this License without prejudice to all other legal rights and remedies of CNC.

Copying Restrictions

You may make one (1) copy of the Software for backup or archival purposes, provided that you reproduce all proprietary notices of CNC on any such copy.

Non Transferable

You may not transfer or assign the Program or this Software License Agreement or any rights or obligations hereunder. Any attempt to do so will be void and shall result in automatic termination of this License without prejudice to all other legal rights and remedies of CNC.

Intellectual Property Rights

The Software is and includes intellectual property of CNC. All associated intellectual property rights, including, without limitation, worldwide patent, trademark, copyright and trade secret rights, are reserved. CNC retains all right, title and interest in and copyrights to the Software, regardless of the form or media in or on which the original or other copies may subsequently exist. This Software License Agreement shall not constitute a sale of the Software and no title or proprietary rights to the Software are transferred to you hereby. You acknowledge that the Software is a unique, confidential and valuable asset of CNC, and CNC shall have the right to seek all equitable and legal redress, which may be available to it for the breach or threatened breach of this Software License Agreement including, without limitation, injunctive relief. Unauthorized copying of the Software or failure to comply with the above restrictions shall result in automatic termination of this License and this Software License Agreement without prejudice to all other legal rights and remedies of CNC.

Confidentiality

You acknowledge that the Software contains proprietary trade secrets of CNC and you hereby agree to maintain the confidentiality of the Software using at least as great a degree of care as you use to maintain the confidentiality of your own most confidential information. You agree to reasonably communicate the terms and conditions of this Software License Agreement to those persons employed by you who come into contact with the Software, and to use reasonable best efforts to ensure their compliance with such terms and conditions, including, without limitation, not knowingly permitting such persons to use any portion of the Program for the purpose of deriving the source code of the Program or defeating the Security Mechanism.

Enforcement Obligations

In the event you become aware that any person or entity in your employ or under your control in a manner not authorized by this Software License Agreement is using the Software, you shall immediately use reasonable best efforts to have such unauthorized use of the Software immediately cease. You shall promptly notify CNC in writing of any unauthorized use of the Software of which you become aware.

Limited Warranties

CNC WARRANTS THAT THE MEDIA ON WHICH THE PROGRAM IS DISTRIBUTED WILL BE FREE OF DEFECTS IN MATERIAL OR WORKMANSHIP FOR A PERIOD OF THIRTY (30) DAYS AFTER PURCHASE. THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY EXCLUDES DEFECTS ARISING OUT OF ACCIDENT, NEGLECT, MISUSE, FAILURE OF ELECTRIC POWER AND CAUSES OTHER THAN ORDINARY AND AUTHORIZED USE. EXCEPT FOR THE FOREGOING LIMITED WARRANTY, THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS." YOUR SOLE REMEDY AND CNC'S SOLE OBLIGATION HEREUNDER SHALL BE, AT CNC'S SOLE OPTION, REPLACEMENT OF THE DEFECTIVE MEDIA OR REFUND OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE BY YOU OF THE SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR OWN RISK. THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS THE ONLY WARRANTY PROVIDED BY CNC REGARDING THE SOFTWARE. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, CNC DISCLAIMS ALL OTHER WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. CNC IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE ANY UPDATES TO THE SOFTWARE. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE PROVE DEFECTIVE FOLLOWING ITS PURCHASE, YOU (AND NOT CNC, ITS DISTRIBUTOR, OR RETAILER) ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION AND ANY INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.

Limitation of Liability

IN NO EVENT WILL CNC, OR ITS EMPLOYEES, SHAREHOLDERS OR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE, OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, OR LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION) ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT OR THE SUBJECT MATTER HEREOF EVEN IF CNC HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. CNC'S ENTIRE LIABILITY WITH RESPECT TO ITS OBLIGATIONS UNDER THIS SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT OR OTHERWISE SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT OF THE LICENSE FEE PAID BY YOU FOR THE SOFTWARE. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIABILITY FOR INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

Indemnification

You shall indemnify and hold harmless CNC, its officers, directors, employees, suppliers and agents from and against all losses, settlements, claims, actions, suits, proceedings, judgments, awards, damages, liabilities, costs and expenses including, without limitation, reasonable attorneys' fees (collectively "Losses") which arise out of or as a result of any breach of this Software License Agreement by you or your employees, agents, resellers, dealers or sub-dealers and shall reimburse CNC for any and all legal, accounting and other fees, costs and expenses reasonably incurred by any of them in connection with investigating, mitigating or defending any such Losses.

Educational Pricing

If you received this Software under or in accordance with a CNC "Educational Pricing" plan, option, schedule or program you shall not use this Software to conduct any computer aided design, computer aided drafting or computer aided machining activities that intentionally, incidentally, directly or indirectly result in the receipt, derivation or generation of profit to or by you.

Termination

This Software License Agreement is effective until terminated. You may terminate this Software License Agreement at any time by returning to CNC all copies of the Software under your control and by returning the Security Mechanism to CNC. CNC may terminate this Software License Agreement if CNC finds in its sole discretion that you have violated the terms of this Software License Agreement. Upon termination of this Software License Agreement, you agree to immediately return to CNC all copies of the Software and return the Security Mechanism to CNC, and to certify to CNC in writing that all known copies, including backup copies, have been returned. All provisions relating to confidentiality, proprietary rights, indemnification and non-disclosure shall survive the termination of this Software License Agreement.

General

This Software License Agreement shall be construed, interpreted and governed by the laws of the state of Connecticut, without regard to conflicts of law provisions. The sole jurisdiction and venue for any litigation arising from or related to this Software License Agreement or the subject matter hereof shall be in an appropriate state or federal court located in Hartford, Connecticut, and you hereby submit to the jurisdiction of such courts. This Software License Agreement shall constitue the entire agreement between you and CNC with respect to the subject matter hereof. Any waiver or modification of this Software License Agreement shall be valid only if it is in writing and signed by both parties hereto. If any part of this Agreement is found invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction, the remainder of this Agreement shall be interpreted so as to reasonably effect the intention of the parties.

U.S. Government Restricted Rights

The Software provided hereunder is a "commercial item," as that term is defined in 48 C.F.R. 2.101, consisting of "commercial computer software" and "commercial computer software documentation," as such terms are used in 48 C.F.R. 12.212. Consistent with 48 C.F.R. 12.212 and 48 C.F.R. 227.7202-1 through 227.7202-4, the Software made available to the United States of America, its agencies and/or instrumentalities, is provided with only those rights set forth in this Agreement. Use, duplication or disclosure of the Software by the government is subject to the restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1) and (2) of the Commercial Computer Software-Restricted Rights clause at 48 C.F.R. 52.227-19, as amended, or any successor regulations thereto.

Export Restrictions

You represent and warrant that you will not, without obtaining prior written authorization from CNC and, if required, of the Bureau of Export Administration of the United States Department of Commerce or other relevant agency of the United States Government, export or reexport, directly or indirectly, the Software from the United States to (i) any country destination to which export is restricted by the Export Administration Regulations of the United States Department of Commerce; (ii) any country subject to sanctions administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control, United States Department of the Treasury; or (iii) such other countries to which export is restricted by any other United States government agency. You further agree that you are solely responsible for compliance with any import laws and regulations of the country of destination of a permitted export or reexport.

Exceptions To Security Mechanism Requirements

CNC software programs MASTERCAM DRAFT and MASTERCAM DEMO do not require the use of Security Mechanisms, and the provisions in this Software License Agreement relating to Security Mechanisms do not apply to your use of such programs, provided, however, that such provisions shall apply to your use of all other Software provided hereunder.

Survival

All provisions of this Software License Agreement relating to confidentiality, non-disclosure, CNC's proprietary rights, disclaimers, and limits of liability, or indemnification by Customer shall survive termination of this License for any reason.

Reservation of Rights

All rights not expressly granted are reserved by CNC.

Trademarks

Mastercam is a registered trademark of CNC. Windows, Windows 95, Windows 98, and Windows NT are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation. Mastercam Verify is created in conjunction with LightWork Design Ltd.

Printed in the United States of America.



This book was printed on recycled paper.

Table of Contents

1	Introduction to Mastercam	1
	Using the sample parts	1
	If you need more help	2
	Additional resources	4
2	Getting Started	5
	Exercise 1 – Learning the Mastercam interface	5
	Exercise 2 – Designing a rectangle	8
	Exercise 3 – Deleting the rectangle and using help	11
3	Creating a 2D Part and Contour Toolpath	17
	Exercise 1 – Designing the part	17
	Exercise 2 – Creating the contour toolpath	
_	Exercise 3 – Making changes to the toolpath	
4	Copying and Transforming Operations	
	Exercise 1 – Creating roughing and finishing passes.	
	Exercise 2 – Creating a contour chamter	
_	Exercise 3 – Mirroring the part and toolpath	
5	Rotating Geometry and Toolpaths	
	Exercise 1 – Creating the geometry	
	Exercise 2 – Cutting the slots	
~	Exercise 3 – Rotating a toolpath	
6	Creating Drill Toolpaths	
	Exercise 1 – Creating a basic drill toolpath	
	Exercise 2 – Changing the size of a unit hole	100
7	Working in 2D	100
1	Eversise 1 Creating 3D geometry	109 110
	Exercise 2 Drawing the bottom of the part	
	Exercise $2 - Creating a drill toolnath$	125
	in the new system view	138
8	Lising Circle Toolnaths	143
U	Exercise 1 – Creating a custom view	144
	Exercise 2 – Machining the outside contour	150
	Exercise 3 – Machining the holes and slot	
	Exercise 4 – Using Auto drill to create	
	multiple drilling operations	168
	······································	

9	Facing and Pocketing Toolpaths	181
	Exercise 1 – Facing the stock with high-speed loops	181
	Exercise 2 – Comparing different pocket cutting methods	185
	Exercise 3 – Specifying an entry point	192
	Exercise 4 – Using contour ramp	197
10	Pocket and Contour Toolpath Techniques	201
	Exercise 1 – Remachining pockets	201
	Exercise 2 – Using depth cuts, island facing,	
	and tapered walls	213
	Exercise 3 – Modifying a toolpath using	
	the Toolpath Editor	221
11	Reusing Operations	229
	Exercise 1 – Creating an operations library	229
	Exercise 2 – Importing operations	242
	Exercise 3 – Using subprograms	252
12	Choosing a Surface Type	259
	Draft	259
	Ruled	260
	Loft	261
	Revolved	262
	Swept	263
	Coons	264
		266
	Irim, Io surfaces	267
	I rim, Flat boundary	267
	Offset	208
	2 Surface Blend	200
	S Sullate Diellu	209
40	Creating and Machining Surfaces	209
13	Creating and Machining Surfaces	271
	Exercise 1 – Creating surfaces	2/1
	Exercise 2 – Greating a rough parallel toolpath	201
	Exercise 3 – Oreating a finish leftover techneth	200
	Exercise 4 – Creating a finish papel toolpath	293
	Exercise 5 – Greating a linish pencil toolpath	297

14	Surface Roughing	303
	Exercise 1 – Creating a rough pocket toolpath	303
	Exercise 2 – Creating a rough plunge toolpath	308
	Exercise 3 – Creating a restmill toolpath	317
	Exercise 4 – Creating a high speed pocket toolpath	329
15	Surface Finishing	337
	Exercise 1 – Using finish steep and shallow toolpaths	337
	Exercise 2 – Creating a finish radial toolpath	345
	Exercise 3 – Creating a finish project toolpath	348
	Exercise 4 – Creating a finish contour toolpath	351
	Exercise 5 – Creating a contour shallow toolpath	357
	Exercise 6 – Creating a finish scallop toolpath	361
	Exercise 7 – Creating a finish flowline toolpath	365
16	Creating Multiaxis Toolpaths	371
	Exercise 1 – Creating a curve 5-axis toolpath	371
	Exercise 2 – Creating a swarf 5-axis toolpath	379
17	Machining Solids	391
	Exercise 1 – Machining the pocket	392
	Exercise 2 – Drilling the holes	401
18	Glossary	413
19	Mastercam Shortcut Keys	441

Introduction to Mastercam

Welcome to Mastercam Version 9. Mastercam Design is a full-featured modeling application that combines 2D and 3D wireframe geometry and surfacing abilities with powerful editing and transformation tools. Mastercam Mill builds on Mastercam Design by letting you create and manage a wide variety of machining operations. Mastercam uses a feature called associativity to link machining operations to the geometry so that toolpaths can be automatically regenerated when part geometry changes.

To help you learn Mastercam, this tutorial and extensive online help accompany the product.

- Use this tutorial as a self-training aid to orient yourself to the Mastercam program and interface. After completing the tutorial, you will have a good introduction to accomplishing common drafting and milling operations with Mastercam. However, the tutorial does not try to cover every Mastercam feature.
- Use the online help as a reference for specific "How to..." or "What's this..." questions, like "How do I machine an open pocket," "What's a Coons surface," or "How do I create a new tool definition?" This tutorial shows you how to use online help.

Using the sample parts

The sample parts for all the exercises in this tutorial are located in the C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric folder. The sample parts are read-only, so you do not accidentally write over them. You should create a separate working folder where you can save your own parts as you complete the tutorial.

Note: The parts for the exercises in this tutorial were created using metric units of measurement. When you open one of the tutorial parts, if you are using a configuration file based on different units of measure, Mastercam will automatically switch configuration files to match the units in the current file. For example, if you are working with the metric configuration file for Mastercam Mill (Mill9m.cfg) and you open an inch part, the system switches to the inch configuration file (Mill9.cfg).

If you need more help

Online help

Online help contains the latest and most up-to-date information about Mastercam. The following pictures show how to use the online help.



Dealers

If you have a question about Mastercam and have not been able to locate the answer in this tutorial or the online help, contact your local Mastercam dealer.

Technical support

If your dealer is unavailable, you can call CNC Software Support Services Monday through Friday, 8:00 a.m.–6:00 p.m., USA Eastern Standard Time.

When calling CNC Software, Inc. for technical support, please follow these guidelines:

- Be sure you have already tried to contact your Mastercam dealer.
- Be ready to describe the problem in detail. Write down what happened, particularly if you cannot call immediately after the problem occurs.
- Be in front of your computer when you call.
- If possible, try to duplicate the problem before calling. Our Support Services technician may require you to duplicate the problem while you are on the phone.
- When you call, have ready a complete description of your hardware, including your operating system (OS), central processing unit (CPU), mouse, and memory.

You can also leave a message for CNC Support Services twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week via our e-mail or web site addresses or the BBS. A member of our technical support staff will return your e-mail or call you on the next business day.

Keep the following information on hand in case you need to reach us:

Important Information		
Address	CNC Software, Inc. 671 Old Post Road Tolland, Connecticut, 06084-9970 USA	
Phone	(860) 875-5006	
Fax	(860) 872-1565	
BBS	(860) 871-8050	
TELNET and ftp://	ftp.mastercam.com or 172.16.100.100	
Internet Address	http://www.mastercam.com	
E-mail	support@mastercam.com	

Additional resources

- For information on training, contact your Mastercam dealer.
- For an ongoing discussion of Mastercam-related topics, visit the Mastercam online forum at http://www.emastercam.com.

2 Getting Started

This chapter introduces you to the Mastercam interface. You will learn about some major Mastercam features, create and delete some simple geometry, learn how to access the online reference material, and save files.

Exercise 1 – Learning the Mastercam interface

This exercise shows you how to navigate through Mastercam. You will learn the following skills:

- Starting Mastercam
- Learning about the different areas on the screen
- Creating a point
- Displaying the construction origin and coordinate axes

Starting Mastercam

1. Double-click the appropriate Mastercam icon on your Windows[®] desktop:



for Mastercam Design

for Mastercam Mill

The following picture shows you some of the main features of the Mastercam workspace.



Learning about the HASP and NetHASP

Mastercam uses two types of licensing: single-user licensing and network licensing. If you are using single-user licensing, you need to have a special piece of hardware called a HASP (sometimes called a dongle or SIM) attached to your parallel or USB port. If you get an error message like the following:



this component is either missing or not configured properly. Refer to your installation instructions (included in a separate document) or contact your dealer for assistance.

If you are using network licensing, then a NetHASP must be installed on a computer on your network. If you see any of the following messages, see your network administrator:

- Error checking out a Mill license. No licenses have been purchased for this product.
- ♦ Active NetHASP server not found.
- ♦ All available licenses are in use.

For more information on NetHASP installation, see **Mastercam Network Licensing.doc** in your main Mastercam folder.

Creating a point

The Main Menu is where you will start most tasks in Mastercam.

1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Point, Position.

Notice that the prompt area at the bottom left of the screen displays the message *Create point: specify a point*.

2. Without moving your mouse, type **25,50**.

Notice that the values you type (the coordinates) appear in the prompt area as you type.

Enter coordinates: 25,50

Tip: You can also enter coordinates as XY-pairs, for example, X25,Y50

- 3. Press [Enter] to display the point at position 25,50.
- 4. Press [F9] to display the construction origin. The graphics window should look like the following picture.



Tip: Press [F9] again to clear the axes from the screen.

Exercise 2 – Designing a rectangle

This exercise shows you how to design a simple rectangle. You will learn the following skills:

- Changing the current color
- Creating a rectangle
- Resizing the screen
- ♦ Zooming and panning
- Saving the part for later use

Before you begin, you should create a working folder where you will store your parts as you are working on them. Choose a different folder than C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric so you will not mistakenly overwrite the original parts.

Changing the current color

You should make the rectangle a different color so you can distinguish its corner from the point you created in the last exercise.

1. Choose the **Color** button: **Color**: **10**. It tells you that the current color is bright green.

Tip: Every color has a corresponding number (green is number 10).

2. Change the current color to magenta by clicking on the magenta button and choosing **OK**.



The Color button changes to show the new color. From now on, everything you create will be in the new color.

Creating a rectangle

In this task, you will create a rectangle with its bottom-left corner at X25,Y50. The rectangle will be 240 mm wide by 125 mm high.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Rectangle, 1 point.
- 2. Enter 240 for the Width.
- 3. Enter 125 for the Height.
- 4. Choose the lower-left **Point Placement** box as shown in the following picture.



5. Choose OK.

- 6. Drag the cursor near the point you created earlier until you see a small white square appear around the point. Notice that the cursor "snaps" into position when you come near the point; this is Mastercam's AutoCursor feature.
- 7. Click the mouse button. This positions the rectangle so that its lower left corner is at the coordinates 25,50. Notice that the rectangle function is still active; every time you click the mouse, you will create another rectangle.
- 8. Press [Esc] to exit the rectangle function.

Note: If you accidentally create more than one rectangle, choose the **Undo** button \bigcirc from the toolbar. It will undo the most recent rectangle.

- 9. Choose the **Screen–Fit** button on the toolbar so you can see the entire rectangle.
- 10. You can pan the screen by pressing the arrow keys (Left, Right, Up, and Down). Press the arrow keys to try it.
- 11. Press the [Page Up] and [Page Down] keys to zoom in or out. Each key press zooms in or out by 5%.

Your part should look like the following picture.



Saving the file

You will save the part in the working folder you created earlier. If you have not created a working folder yet, do so now.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, File, Save.
- 2. Save the file as **firstpart.mc9** in your working folder.

Note: It is a good idea to save your file frequently as you work. This way, if you make an error, you can choose **File, Get** to open a recent version of the file. Make a practice of saving your file every time you successfully complete an exercise.

Exercise 3 – Deleting the rectangle and using help

The Create Rectangle function has several useful options. You can learn about them in the online help. In this exercise, you will:

- Delete the rectangle
- Use Help to learn about rectangle options
- Set rectangle options and create a new rectangle
- Use AutoSave to quickly save your work

Delete the rectangle



1. Choose the **Delete** button on the toolbar. You will see the menu shown in the following picture. The different options give you different ways of selecting what geometry you want to delete.

Chain	Delete: Select an entity or:	
When you click on an entity, Mastercam	<u>C</u> hain	
automatically selects geometry that	Window	
connects to it like a chain.		
	Ar <u>e</u> a	
Window	<u>O</u> nly	
drawng a rectangle or polygon around	All	
them.	<u>G</u> roup	
	<u>R</u> esult	
	<u>D</u> uplicate	
	<u>U</u> ndelete	

Tip: To delete a single entity, click on it; you don't need to choose anything from the menu.

- 2. Choose Chain from the menu.
- 3. Click anywhere on the rectangle. The whole rectangle highlights, telling you that it is selected.
- 4. Choose Done. The rectangle is deleted.



5. Choose the **Undo** button on the toolbar. The rectangle reappears.

Tip: Choose the **Undelete–Single** button **Solution** to make the rectangle reappear one segment at a time.

- 6. Choose the **Delete** button again. This time, instead of choosing **Chain** from the menu, click on the rectangle. Without chaining, Mastercam only selects one line at a time.
- 7. Delete the remaining lines.

Using Help to learn about rectangle options

1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Rectangle.



- 2. You can see the three options on the menu: **1 point**, **2 point**, and **Options**. Choose the **Help** button on the toolbar to learn more about them.
- 3. The following help screen displays. Every time you choose the Help button while a menu is active, you get a topic about that menu.



Note: You can also press [Alt + H] at any time to get help.

- 4. Read through the topic to learn about the different kinds of rectangle-related shapes you can create. The help topic also gives you links to instructions for specific procedures and related topics.
- 5. Close the Help window.

Setting rectangle options and creating a new rectangle

According to the help topic, you can use the Options command to automatically create rounded corners and a center point on the rectangle. You will create a new rectangle with these options.

- 1. Choose **Options** from the menu.
- Select the Corner Fillets–On check box and enter a Radius of 12.
- 3. Select the **Create Center Point** check box. Your dialog box should match the following picture.

Rectangle Options	? ×
Rectangular Shape Rectangle Obround Single D Double D Ellipse	
Corner Fillets Ton Radius: 12.0	Surface Creation
Rotation	Create Center Point
	<u>OK C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 4. Choose the 2 button on the title bar of the dialog box and notice how the cursor changes shape. Click on one of the fields in the dialog box and you will see a short description of what it does. This "What's This" help is available on almost every dialog box in Mastercam. Use it whenever you need a quick explanation of what a dialog box option does or means.
- 5. Choose **OK** to close the dialog box.
- 6. Choose **1 point** from the menu.

7. Enter the values shown in the following picture and choose OK.

Rectangle: One Point	? ×
Width 240.0	
Height 125.0	
Point Placement	
<u> OK </u> <u>Cancel</u>	<u>H</u> elp

- 8. Move the cursor over the point you created earlier until it is highlighted. Click to place the rectangle.
- 9. Press [Esc]. You can see the rounded corners and center point that were automatically added.

Using AutoSave to quickly save your work

- 1. Press [Alt + A] to open the AutoSave dialog box.
- 2. Choose **OK** to quickly save the file with the same name and in the same location. This will overwrite whatever version is already saved to disk.

Tip: You can choose the **Active** checkbox and type in a time interval. Mastercam will then automatically save your work at the set times.

3. Choose **Yes** to confirm the overwrite.

Now that you've seen how to get around in Mastercam, you're ready to create your first part. The next chapter will show you how to use Mastercam's design features to draft a part from a blueprint. Then, you'll create a complete operation to machine it.

Creating a 2D Part and Contour Toolpath

This chapter introduces you to the major steps that typically go into making a part:

- Drawing the part
- Creating a toolpath
- Previewing the toolpath
- Editing the toolpath
- Posting the finished toolpath

Along the way, you will see how Mastercam's associativity feature links the different parts of your operation. You will create a basic 2D part and cut it with a contour toolpath.

Exercise 1 – Designing the part

This exercise introduces you to some basic drawing functions. You will learn the following skills:

- Creating a new file
- Creating points, lines, arcs, and fillets
- Mirroring and rotating lines
- Trimming lines and arcs

The following blueprint shows the part you will create.



Creating a new file

If necessary, follow these steps to create a new, blank Mastercam drawing.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, File, New.
- 2. Choose Yes when prompted to create a new drawing.
- 3. If the current file has had any changes made to it since the last time it was saved, you will be asked whether or not you wish to save it. Choose **Yes** again if you wish to save it.

Creating construction guides

The first step is to create some construction guides to properly locate and orient the drawing.

- 1. Create the center point of the elbow. Choose Main Menu, Create, Point, Position.
- 2. Enter the coordinates **75,75**. As soon as you start typing, the numbers will appear in the prompt area.

Tip: Press [Enter] after entering the number(s) in the prompt area.

+‡+

- 3. Choose the **Screen–Fit** button on the toolbar to center the point in the graphics window.
- 4. Next, draw the center lines for the two arms. Choose Main Menu, Create, Line, Polar.

18 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- Click on the point to select it as an endpoint.
 Tip: Pass the cursor over the point. When a square displays, click the mouse button.
- 6. In the prompt area, enter an angle of **0**.
- 7. Enter a line length of **90**. The guide for the horizontal arm appears.
- 8. Mastercam automatically prompts you to select an endpoint for another polar line. Click on the same point as in step 5.
- 9. Enter an angle of 105.
- 10. Enter a line length of 85.
- 11. Press [F9] to show the construction origin and XY axes. The part should look like the following picture.



12. Press [F9] again to clear the axes from the screen.

Drawing the arcs

Use arcs to create the curved ends and outside bend of the part.

1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Polar, Sketch.



- 5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 to create the second and third arcs. Click on points 4, 5, 6 and 7, 8, 9 to create the other arcs.
- 6. If necessary, choose the Screen-Fit button again to fit the part completely in the screen. It should look like the following picture:





Rotating lines to create the arms

To create the outside edges of the arms, you will rotate the center line guides you created earlier.

1. Choose Main Menu, Xform, Rotate.

20 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 4. Select the line at position 1.
 5. Choose Done.
 6. Select the endpoint at position 2.
- 7. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box and choose **OK**.

Rotate	? ×
Operation O Move O Copy O Join	
Use construction attributes	
Number of steps: 1	1
Rotation angle: 5.0	
KCancelH	elp

- 8. Select the line at position 3.
- 9. Choose Done.

Tip: Instead of choosing menu items with the mouse, you can type the shortcut letter. For each item on the menu, the shortcut letter is underlined.

- 10. Select the line endpoint at position 4.
- 11. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box and choose **OK**.

Rotate	? ×
Operation C Move C Copy C Join	
Use construction attributes	
Number of steps: 1	
Rotation angle: -5.0	
<u>Q</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> e	əlp



12. Whenever you do a Xform operation, Mastercam changes the colors of the original geometry and the new geometry so you can clearly see the results of the operation. Choose the **Screen-Clear colors** button on the toolbar to return the lines to their original color. The part should look like the following picture.



Moving the lines to the proper position

You've created the lines at the proper angle and orientation. Now, you need to move them to the proper position tangent to the arcs.

1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Line, Parallel, Arc.

22 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 2. Select the line at position 1.
- 3. Select the arc at position 2.
- 4. Mastercam shows you two possible lines. Click on the bottom line to keep it.
- 5. To create the second line, select the line at position 3.



- 6. Select the arc at position 2 again.
- 7. Click on the left line to keep it.



- 8. Choose the **Delete** button on the toolbar.
- 9. Click on lines 1 and 2 as shown in the following picture to delete them.



10. Finally, create the other side of the arms by mirroring the lines around the construction guides. Choose **Main Menu, Xform, Mirror**.

- 11. Select the line at position 1.
- 12. Choose **Done**.
- 13. Select the line at position 2.
- 14. Choose **Copy** and **OK** from the Mirror dialog box.
- 15. Repeat steps 11 through 14 for lines 3 and 4.



16. Clear the screen colors. Your part should look like the following picture.



Creating the fillets

Create fillets to join the lines and arcs. You will also see how Mastercam can automatically trim lines to the base of the fillets. Complete the part by deleting the remaining construction guides.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Fillet, Radius.
- 2. Enter the fillet radius: 10

24 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial
3. Select the line at position 1 and the arc at position 2.



The fillet should look like the following picture.



4. Select the lines and arcs in the order shown in the following picture to create the remaining fillets.



The part should look like the following picture when you are done.



Tip: To turn off the automatic trim feature, choose \mathbf{Trim} from the Fillet menu so that it is set to \mathbf{N} .

- 5. Trim the last arc to the adjoining lines. Choose Main Menu, Modify, Trim, 3 entities.
- 6. Select the lines at positions 1 and 2, then the arc at position 3.



- 7. Delete the lines at positions 4 and 5.
- 8. Delete the point at position 6.

The completed part should look like the following picture.



Saving the file

- 1. Choose Main Menu, File, Save.
- 2. Save the file as **elbow1.mc9** in your working folder.

Exercise 2 – Creating the contour toolpath

This exercise shows you the basic steps for creating a toolpath and posting it to an NC file that can be read by your machine tool. In this exercise, you will create a contour toolpath. In a contour toolpath, the tool follows the shape of a curve or chain of curves. You will use the part you created in Exercise 1.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating a contour toolpath
- Chaining geometry
- Choosing a tool and setting toolpath parameters
- Selecting a tool library
- Using the backplot function to preview a toolpath
- Posting the toolpath to an NC file

Choosing the toolpath and chaining the geometry

Chaining is the process of selecting geometry for a toolpath or other Mastercam function. A chain is a set of curves (lines, arcs and/or splines) that have adjoining endpoints (points can also be chained). A toolpath can have more than one chain.

- 1. If necessary, open the file from the previous exercise, elbow1.mc9.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Contour.
- 3. Select the line at position 1 to start the chain. You should see the whole part highlight.



To help you select the right geometry, Mastercam highlights the line when the cursor is close to it. After selecting the line properly, you will see an arrow display as shown in the following picture.



4. Choose Done.

Selecting a tool

As soon as you finish selecting geometry for the toolpath, Mastercam automatically prompts you to select a tool and enter parameters. Each toolpath can use only one tool. Mastercam organizes tool definitions into libraries. You can have as many libraries as you wish. In this procedure, you will also learn how to select a different tool library.

1. Mastercam automatically shows you the Tool parameters tab. Right-click in the large white area and choose **Get tool from library** as shown in the following picture.



2. Right-click in the tool list and choose Change library.

j Tools Man	ager - C:\MCAI	M9\MILL\TOOLS\	TOOLS_MM.TL9		?
<u>F</u> ilter	Filter Active 249 of 249 tool	e Is displayed			
Tool Number	r Tool Type	Diameter	Tool Name	Corner Radius	Radius Type 🔺
1	Center Drill	5.0000 mm	5. CENTER DRILL	0.000000 mm	None
2	Center Drill	10.0000 mm	10. CENTER DRILL	0.000000 mm	None
3	Center Drill	15.0000 mm	15. CENTER DRILL	0.000000 mm	None
8 4	Center Drill	20.0000 mm	Change library	0.000000 mm	None
0 5	Center Drill	25.0000 mm	Convert a library to text	0.000000 mm	None
11 🖉	Drill	1.0000 mm	Create a library fore text	0.000000 mm	None
12	Drill	2.0000 mm	Dee Cla	0.000000 mm	None
9 13	Drill	3.0000 mm	Doc nie Devel dee Gle	0.000000 mm	None
9 14	Drill	4.0000 mm	Detail doc file	0.000000 mm	None
Ø 15	Drill	5.0000 mm	5. DRILL	0.000000 mm	None
0 16	Drill	6.0000 mm	6. DRILL	0.000000 mm	None
Ø 17	Drill	7.0000 mm	7. DRILL	0.000000 mm	None
19. 🛛	Drill	8 0000 mm	9 DRILL	0.000000.000	None

- 3. Select the file MetricST52.tl9 and choose Save.
- 4. Select the 12 mm HSS (high-speed steel) flat endmill as shown in the following picture.

<u>F</u> ilter	Filter Active	displayed			
ool Number	Tool Type	Diameter	Tool Name	Corner Radius	Radius Type 🖌
944	Endmill1 Flat	6.0000 mm	6. FLAT END MILL HSS	0.000000 mm	None
33	Endmill1 Flat	6.0000 mm	6. FLAT END MILL CRB	0.000000 mm	None
964	Endmill1 Flat	8.0000 mm	8. FLAT END MILL HSS	0.000000 mm	None
34	Endmill1 Flat	8.0000 mm	8. FLAT END MILL CRB	0.000000 mm	None
984	Endmill1 Flat	10.0000 mm	10. FLAT END MILL HSS	0.000000 mm	None
35	Endmill1 Flat	10.0000 mm	10. FLAT END MILL CRB	0.000000 mm	None
10.	Endmill1 Flat	12.0000 mm	12. FLAT END MILL HSS	0.000000 mm	None
36	Endmill1 Flat	12.0000 mm	12. FLAT END MILL CRB	0.000000 mm	None
40	Endmill1 Flat	12.0000 mm	12. FLAT END MILL CIN	0.000000 mm	None
10.	Endmill1 Flat	16.0000 mm	16. FLAT END MILL HSS	0.000000 mm	None
37	Endmill1 Flat	16.0000 mm	16. FLAT END MILL CRB	0.000000 mm	None
41	Endmill1 Flat	16.0000 mm	16. FLAT END MILL CIN	0.000000 mm	None
10.	Endmill1 Flat	18.0000 mm	18. FLAT END MILL HSS	0.000000 mm	None
38	Endmill1 Flat	18.0000 mm	18. FLAT END MILL CRB	0.000000 mm	None
42	Endmill1 Flat	18.0000 mm	18. FLAT END MILL CIN	0.000000 mm	None -

5. Choose **OK**. The tool appears in the tool display area as shown in the following picture.

Tool parameters Contour parameters					
	Left 'click' on tool to select; ri	ght 'click' to ed	lit or define new tool		
#1-12.0000 endmil[] flat					
Tool # 1	Tool name 12. FLAT	Tool dia	12.0 Corner radius 0.0		
Head # 🗐 -1	Feed rate 40.0	Program #	0 Spindle speed 660		
Dia. offset 1	Plunge rate 40.0	Seq. start	100 Coolant Off 💌		
Len. offset	Retract rate 40.0	Seq. inc.	2		
Comment			Lhange <u>N</u> U		
	A Ho	m <u>e</u> pos	☐ <u>R</u> ef point ☐ Misc. <u>values</u>		
	Ro	ary a <u>x</u> is	T/C plane		
To batch			Canned <u>t</u> ext		
			<u> </u>		

Entering toolpath parameters

Mastercam automatically fills in many of the fields with default values. For this toolpath, you will use the default values for all the Tool parameters, and edit the Contour parameters.

- 1. Choose the Contour parameters tab.
- 2. Enter a Retract height of 10.
- 3. Enter a Feed plane of 2.
- 4. Enter a **Depth** of **-10**. Make sure your other parameters match the following picture.

Tool parameters Contour parameters	
Clearance 1000 Absolute Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 2.0 Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 10.0 Absolute Incremental Eeepth 10.0 Absolute Incremental	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Image: Computer type: Image: Compensation direction: Image: Computer type: Image: Computer type: Image: Compensation direction: Image: Computer type: Image: Computer type: Tip comp Tip Image: Computer type: Image: Computer type: Roll cutter around corners Sharp Image: Computer type: Image: Computer type: Image: Computer type: C
Contour type: 2D Image: Multiser in the second sec	inasses Lead in/out
	<u>OK</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

The parameters as shown in the preceding picture instruct the tool to make the following motions:

- Rapid from the home position to 10 mm above the starting position of the toolpath (the Retract height).
- Rapid straight down to 2 mm above the stock (the Feed plane).
- ◆ Plunge into the stock to a depth of -10 mm at the Plunge rate, 40 mm/min., as set on the Tool parameters tab. Because the feed plane is set to 2 mm above the part, the total plunge distance is 12 mm.
- Feed around the part at the feed rate of 40 mm/min., as set on the Tool parameters tab. Because the compensation is set to Left, the tool will be offset from the part geometry by its radius, 6 mm.
- When the tool returns to the original starting point, it will rapid to the retract height, since the **Rapid retract** check box is selected.

5. Choose **OK** to generate the toolpath. It should look like the following picture.



Note: Remember that the online help has complete descriptions of all the fields, buttons, and options on each dialog box.

Backplotting to view the toolpath

Mastercam has two functions that you can use to preview toolpaths and operations and catch errors before you create the NC program:

- Backplot, which gives you a precise view of specific tool movements.
- Verify, which gives you a better view of stock removal.

This exercise will show you how to backplot your toolpath (you will use the Verify function in the next chapter).

- 1. Choose **Operations** to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. Make sure the settings on the Backplot menu match the following picture.



13. Choose **Step** from the Backplot menu or press [S] repeatedly. Mastercam will step through the toolpath. It should look like the following picture.



14. You will see a confirmation message when the backplot has finished. Choose **OK**.



15. You can also preview the tool motion in 3D. Choose the green **Gview–Isometric** button from the toolbar to look at the part in isometric view.



16. If necessary, choose the **Screen–Fit** button to fit the part in the screen.

34 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

17. Press [S] again to backplot through the toolpath. Now you can see the plunge and retract moves clearly. Notice that the rapid moves are in yellow and the feed moves are in light blue.



18. When the backplot is complete, choose **OK**.

Exercise 3 – Making changes to the toolpath

This exercise shows you how to make changes to your part or toolpath and automatically regenerate your operation. In this exercise, you will make the following changes:

- Edit the toolpath parameters to add entry and exit moves
- Change the part geometry
- Switch to a different tool

After you've made all the changes, you will post the toolpath to an NC file. You will learn the following skills:

- Using the Operations Manager to edit toolpaths
- Changing toolpath parameters
- Regenerating operations
- ◆ Adding entry and exit (lead in/out) moves
- Using a selection mask
- Posting a toolpath to an NC file

Adding lead in/out moves

For this part, you need to change how the tool enters the material. Plunging directly into the part is not desirable because of the dwell marks left behind at the tool entry spot. In this exercise, you add entry and exit moves to the toolpath to eliminate the dwell marks.

- 1. Press [Esc] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the **Parameters** icon.



- 3. Choose the Lead in/out check box and button.
- 4. The Lead in/out dialog box lets you specify entry and exit moves: either lines, arcs, or a combination of both. For this part, you want to use just arcs, so enter 0 in the Line–Length field in the Entry section to disable line moves. (You will use the default arc dimensions.)
- 5. Choose the \rightarrow button to copy the Entry arc dimensions to the Exit section. Make sure your settings match the following picture.

Very series and series 1	Lead In/Out	? ×
You can enter the line length in either of two ways. You can type a percentage of the tool diameter here	Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours Gouge check entry/exit motion Entry Entry<	
or type the absolute length in here. When you type a number in one field, the other automatically updates. (The Arc Radius works the same way.)	Arc Radius: 100.0 \$\$ 12.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use exit point Use point depth Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only Exit on last depth cut only	
	<u> </u>	

- 6. Choose OK twice.
- 7. When you return to the Operations Manager, you will see a red X as shown in the following picture. This means that some part of the toolpath has changed (in this case, you've added the lead in/out moves) and the operation needs to be regenerated. Choose the **Regen Path** button.





- 8. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 9. Choose the green **Gview–Top** button from the toolbar. The new toolpath should look like the following picture.



Changing the part geometry

In this procedure, you will make a design change to the part, changing the 10 mm radius fillets to 6 mm fillets.



- 1. Choose **Delete** from the toolbar.
- 2. Choose All, Mask.
- 3. The Selection Mask dialog box lets you describe which types entities to delete. In the **Entities** list, choose **Arcs**.
- 4. Choose Same as.
- 5. Select any of the 10 mm fillets. When you return to the Selection Mask dialog box, you see that all of the fields are filled in with the attributes of the 10 mm fillet. Mastercam will use this mask to select all of the fillets and delete them.

Selection Mask		? ×
Entities Points Lines Arcs Splines Curves on Surfaces Brafting Solids	Attributes	Level I Select Line Width I Select Arc Diameter I 20.0 Select All Clear All
Select All Clear All	<u>D</u> K	<u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp

- 6. Choose OK.
- 7. Choose **Yes** at the confirmation prompt. Your part should look like the following picture.



8. Create 6 mm fillets in all of the gaps. (See page 24 if you don't remember how to create fillets.) Your part should look like the following picture.



Changing the tool

When you created the toolpath for this part, you used a 12 mm endmill. Since the fillets are now smaller and the same radius as the tool, you will switch to a smaller tool so you can get smoother tool motion around the fillets.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the **Parameters** icon.
- 3. Choose the Tool parameters tab.
- 4. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 5. Select the 10 mm HSS flat endmill and choose OK.
- 6. Choose OK again to return to the Operations Manager.
- 7. Choose **Regen Path** to regenerate the toolpath with the new tool and new geometry. The new toolpath should look like the following picture.



Creating an NC program

In order to cut a part on a CNC machine tool, you need to give it a program in a format that your control can read. The act of making this file (called an NC program) is called post processing, or posting. When you post a file, Mastercam runs a special program called a post processor that reads your Mastercam file and creates an NC program from it. Your original Mastercam file isn't changed.

- 1. Choose **Post**. (The Operations Manager window should still be open.)
- 2. Select the Save NC file check box, and choose the Edit option.
- 3. Choose the **Ask** option (this means that it will prompt you for a file name). Your dialog box should match the following picture.

	Post processing	? ×
Post processors are machine- and control-specific. When you installed Mastercam, you selected a default	Active post MPFAN.PST	Change Post
post processor. The current post processor is listed here. If you need to, you can select a different one by choosing Change Post .	Save NCI file C Overwrite Ask NC file	Edit
	Save NC file O Overwrite SAsk	I Edit NC extension .nc
	Send Send to machine	Comm



WARNING: Before running an NC program on your machine tool, you MUST ensure that it was created with the proper post processor. If the correct post processor was not used, you could crash your machine tool and cause serious injury or damage. Do NOT assume that the post processor shown in these examples is compatible with your own machine tool.

- 4. Choose **OK**.
- 5. Type in a file name when prompted. If you wish, you can navigate to a different folder; the default is **Mcam9\Mill\Nc**. Choose **Save** when you are done.

Tip: Check your machine tool or control documentation to see what file names are allowed. For example, you might be limited to 8 characters or less.

6. After you save the file, it will appear in a text-editing window so you can review it or make changes, as shown in the following picture.

🗐 MILL\NC\ELBOW.NC	X
8	
09999	
(PROGRAM NAME - ELBOW)	
(DATE=DD-MM-YY - 29-01-02 TIME=HH:MM - 17:53)	
N100G21	
N1 02G 0G 17G 4 0G 49G 8 0G 9 0	
(10. FLAT END MILL HSS TOOL - 2 DIA. OFF 2 LEN 2 DIA	1
N106G0G90X46.207959.769A0.S1909M3	
N108G43H2Z10.	
N112612-10.F32.	
NII463A54.319Y71.353KI0.FI90.9	
N11061A42.4747136.529 N110679719 8190190 98001	
N128C2X42.0131137.200K1.	
N122X71 464V147 800R21	
N124G3X71 404Y146 281R1	
N12661X89_94Y95_353	
N128G3X9A,792Y94,699R1.	
N130G1X149.37Y89.574	
N132G3X150.164Y89.862R1.	-
	· [//

- 7. Close the NC program window to return to Mastercam.
- 8. Close the Operations Manager and press [Alt + A] to save the file.

Setting the default tool library

The remaining exercises in this tutorial will use tools from the MetricST52.tl9 tool library that you selected earlier. In this procedure, you will make this the default tool library, so that you do not have to keep selecting it.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Screen, Configure.
- 2. Choose the Files tab.
- 3. Choose Tool library in the File usage list.
- 4. Make sure that **METRICST52.TL9** appears in the **File name** field as shown in the following picture. If it doesn't, choose the

File 🛃 button and select it.

- 5. Choose Save As to save the setting to the configuration file.
- 6. The file in which it is saved is shown in the **Current** configuration file field, **MILL9M.CFG**. Choose Save.
- 7. Choose Yes when asked to overwrite the current file.
- 8. Choose OK.

You've now seen all the major stages of creating a part and an operation to machine it. In the next chapter, you will use the simple operation you created in this chapter as a building block for more sophisticated operations.

Copying and Transforming Operations

This chapter shows you how to use the simple toolpath you created in the previous chapter as a building block for more sophisticated operations. You will create the following new operations:

- Finishing and multi-pass roughing operations
- A chamfering operation
- A mirrored copy of the operation

The part used in this chapter is the same one that you saved at the end of Chapter 3. If you did not complete Chapter 3, use the file **new elbow-mm.mc9**, in the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.

Tip: When opening this file, select the **Restore entire NCI on file get** option.

Exercise 1 – Creating roughing and finishing passes

The 2D contour toolpath you created in the previous chapter only has a single cutting pass. You decide that it takes off too much stock for a single pass, so you decide to rough out the part in multiple passes with a larger tool. You will complete the part with a separate finishing operation. In this exercise, you will use the following skills:

- Copying operations
- Creating multiple passes
- Creating finishing operations
- Changing tools and feed rates

Copying operations

To create the separate operations for roughing and finishing with the minimum number of steps, you will copy the current 2D contour operation and then edit the parameters for each copy.

- If necessary, open the part file you saved at the end of Chapter 3. If you did not complete Chapter 3, choose File, Get from the menu, and open the file new elbow-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 3. Right-click on the Contour folder icon and drag it below the NCI icon.



4. Release the mouse button and choose Copy after.



A copy of the operation appears as shown in the following picture.



- 5. Click on the name of the first operation until it highlights for editing, and type in a new name: **Rough**
- 6. Repeat for the second operation and type the new name: **Finish**. The operations should look like the following picture.



Setting the roughing parameters

To make the first operation a true roughing operation, you will select a bigger tool for it and specify multiple passes.

- 1. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the Rough operation.
- 2. Choose the **Tool parameters** tab.
- 3. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 4. Select the 25 mm HSS flat endmill and choose OK.
- 5. Choose the Contour parameters tab.
- 6. Since this is a roughing pass, you should leave some stock for the finish operation. Enter **1** in the **XY stock to leave** field. Your contour parameters should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Contour parameters Image: Contour parameters Image: Contour parameters Image: Conto	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Image: Computer direction: Image: Compensation direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Tip comp Tip Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Roll cutter around corners Sharp Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Infinite look ahead Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Max. depth variance Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: XY stock to leave Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Z stock to leave Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction:
Contour type: 2D	to leave ipasses thouts Lead in/out Filter DKancelelp

- 7. Select the **Multi passes** check box and button.
- 8. Enter 2 for the Number of Roughing passes and select Keep tool down. The rest of the values should match the following picture.

Multi Passes	? ×
Roughing passes	
Number	2
Spacing	2.0
Finishing passes	
Number	0
Spacing	0.5
Machine finish passes at	
C Final depth	All depths
🔽 Keep tool down	
<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ance	l <u>H</u> elp

- 9. Choose OK.
- 10. Choose Lead in/out.
- 11. Enter an **Overlap** of **5**. This means that the entry and exit arcs will overlap by this distance.
- 12. Change the Entry Arc-Radius % to 50.
- 13. Choose the button to copy the settings to the Exit section. Your values should match the following picture.

Lead In/Out			? ×
Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours Gouge check entry/exit motion	Overlap:	5.0	
Entry Line C Perpendicular I Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 50.0 % 12.5 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only	Exit Line: O P Leng Radi Swe Helix Us Swe	erpendicular Tange Tange th: D.0 S Tange th: Tange S Tange T Tange S Tange T	nt © 0.0 0.0 12.5 90.0 0.0 0.0
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

14. Choose OK twice.

Setting the finish parameters

Since the second operation will be a finish operation, you will keep the original tool, but will use a slower feed rate. Also, you will edit the lead in/out moves so they have the same overlap as the roughing cuts.

- 1. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the Finish operation.
- 2. Choose the **Tool parameters** tab.

- 3. Enter a Feed rate of 20.
- 4. Choose the Contour parameters tab.
- 5. Choose Lead in/out.
- 6. Enter an **Overlap** value of **5**. Make sure the other values match the following picture.

Lead In/Out	? ×
Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours Gouge check entry/exit motion	Overlap: 5.0
Entry Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 100.0 % 10.0 Sweep: 90.0	Exit Line C Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 100.0 % 10.0 Sweep: 90.0
Helix height: 0.0	Helix height: 0.0
	<u> </u>

- 7. Choose **OK** twice to return to the Operations Manager.
- 8. Choose Select All.
- 9. Choose **Regen Path** to regenerate both operations with the new parameters. The new toolpaths should look like the following picture.



Backplotting the new toolpaths

1. Choose **Backplot**. Make sure both operations are still selected as shown in the following picture.

Tip: The blue check marks indicate which operations are selected.



- 2. Set the Verify option to Y.
- 3. Press [S] to step through the toolpath. Notice how the stock is removed after each pass, and how the finish tool cleans out the areas that the roughing tool cannot reach.

The following picture shows you a snapshot midway through the final finish operation. You can see the stock left by the roughing operation and how the finish operation is cutting right to the blueprint dimension.



- 4. Press **OK** when the backplot is finished.
- 5. Choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager, and choose **OK** to close it.
- 6. Choose **Main Menu, File, Save** and save the file in your working folder as **elbow2.mc9**.

Exercise 2 – Creating a contour chamfer

Next, you would like to add a chamfer to the contour. Mastercam has contour toolpath options that let you easily create a chamfer by specifying some simple dimensions. You will create a separate operation for the chamfer that uses a chamfer tool. You will learn the following skills:

- Creating 2D chamfer operations
- Using the Verify feature to preview stock removal

Creating the chamfer operation

You will create the chamfer operation in the same way that you created the finishing operation in the previous exercise, by copying an existing operation and editing its parameters.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Make a copy of the Finish operation and name the copy **Chamfer**. (See page 45 if you don't remember how to do this.)
- 3. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the new Chamfer operation.
- 4. Choose the Tool parameters tab.
- 5. Select the 10 mm HSS chamfer mill from the tool library.
- 6. Choose the Contour parameters tab.
- 7. In the Contour type drop-down list, select 2D chamfer.
- 8. Choose the Chamfer button.
- 9. Enter 1 for the **Width**, and **2.5** for the **Tip offset**. Your selections should match the following picture.



- 10. Choose **OK** to return to the Contour parameters dialog box.
- 11. Enter **0.0** for the **Depth**, and choose **Incremental**. The actual cutting depth achieved by the chamfer mill is determined by the width and tip offset you entered in step 9. Your contour settings should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Contour parameters	
Image: Clearance 100.0 Image: Absolute Incremental Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance only at the start and end of operation Image: Clearance on	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Tip comp Tip Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Tip comp Tip Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Roll cutter around corners Sharp Image: Computer direction: Image: Infinite look ahead Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Max. depth variance 0.025 Image: Computer direction: XY stock to leave 0.0 Image: Computer direction: Z stock to leave 0.0 Image: Computer direction:
Contour type: 2D chamfer Chamfer Bernou Remachining Dep	inasses Lead in/out
	<u>QK</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 12. Choose OK to return to the Operations Manager.
- 13. Choose Regen Path to create the toolpath.

Using the Verify feature to preview stock removal

In previous exercises, you used the Backplot function to preview toolpath motion. In this exercise, you will use the Verify function in the Operations Manager instead. This function gives you a better picture of the 3D part.

- 1. While inside the Operations Manager, choose **Select All** so you can verify all the operations.
- 2. Choose Verify.
- 3. Choose the 2 button to set the Verify configuration.
- 4. Enter **0** for the **Z**-Max point. Your values should match the following picture.

Verify configuration: (Current MC9					? ×
Stock	Boundaries		Min point:	Max point:	Margins:	<u>N</u> CI file
Box Cylinder C Cylinder	Scan <u>t</u> oolpath	(s) X	21.50038	196.5	0.0	Current <u>M</u> C9
Cylinder axis	Use Job Setup va	alues Y ers Z	-22.5	0.0	<u>, 0.0</u>	
O × O Y O Z M Center on axis	 Initial stock size sou C Scan toolpath(s) C Job Setup C Use last size 	Irce	Cylinder dia	imeter:	12.50001	
Stock file:			<u>6</u> et colors	📕 🗖 Trar	nslucent stock	
Tool C Turbo (no tool) C Wireframe tool C Solid tool C Display holder	Profile C Auto C As defined	⊤ Display contro Moves/step Moves/refre	ol [10 sh: [1		Miscellaneous ▼ Use TrueSolio 「 Cutter compet 「 Display XYZ a 「 Display coord	t nsation in control axes inates
Change tool/color	je	Speed	er each tool	Quality oath	Create log file Compare to S Remove chip	s TL file s
		B	eset	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	Help

Tip: In later chapters you will see how to use Job Setup to build a stock model.

- 5. Choose OK.
- 6. Choose the button. The part should look like the following picture.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 55

- 7. Choose the 🗷 button on the Verify toolbar to end the Verify session and return to the Operations Manager.
- 8. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.

Exercise 3 – Mirroring the part and toolpath

You are required to manufacture both left-hand and right-hand versions of the part. You can do this by mirroring the part and toolpath. This lets you maintain the original toolpath parameters and machining direction for all the operations, ensuring that the duplicated part has the identical finish and size as the original. In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating mirror images of parts and toolpaths
- Re-ordering operations in the Operations Manager for greater machining efficiency

Mirroring the part

- 1. Press the [Page Down] key several times to zoom out from the part.
- 2. Right-click anywhere in the graphics window and choose **Dynamic Pan** from the menu.



- 3. Click and drag to the right until the part is at the right edge of the screen.
- 4. Click again to exit dynamic panning.
- 5. Press [F9] to display the coordinate axes.
- 6. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Next menu, Transform.
- 7. Choose Toolpath Group 1. This selects all the operations.
- 8. Choose Type-Mirror.
- 9. Choose **Create new operations and geometry**. Make sure your other selections should match the following picture.

Transform Operation Parame Type and Methods Translate	Rotate Mirror	? ×
Type Translate Tool plane origin only Rotate Mirror Method Tool plane Coordinate Group NCI output by	Source Operations Toolpath Group 1 G	 Create new operations and geometry Keep this transform operation Copy source operations Disable posting in selected source operations Subprogram Absolute C Incremental Work offset numbering Off Meintain source operation's Assign new
C Operation order Urrique subprograms C Operation type	Comment	Start 0 Increment 0

- 10. Choose the **Mirror** tab.
- 11. Choose **Reverse toolpath**. The original toolpath used climb milling; selecting **Reverse toolpath** means that the mirrored part will also use climb milling, so the finish on both parts will match.

The Mirror tab should match the following picture.

e and Methods 🛛 Translate 🗍 R	state Mirror
Mirror method	Mirror points
C X-axis	× 0.0 → × 0.0
Y-axis	Y 0.0 Y 0.0
C Entity	Z 0.0 C
<u>Select</u>	Select Select
View #1	
	Reverse toolpath

12. Choose **OK**. The part and toolpaths should look like the following picture.



Reordering operations to minimize tool changes

Because you selected **Create new operations and geometry** when you mirrored the part, Mastercam added three new operations to the operations list: a separate roughing, finishing, and chamfering operation for the mirrored part. The way the operations are ordered now, Mastercam will rough the first part, then finish and chamfer it before roughing the second part, resulting in unnecessary tool changes. In this procedure, you will rearrange the operations so that the roughing, finishing, and chamfering operations are grouped to minimize tool changes.

 Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager, and scroll down to the bottom of the list. You can see the new operations 4, 5, and 6.



- 2. Click and drag the corner of the Operations Manager window as shown in the preceding picture to make it larger, so you can see all the operations.
- 3. Click on the second rough operation (Operation 4) and drag it on top of the first rough operation.

4. Click on the second finish operation and drag it on top of the first finish operation. Your operations should be in the following order.



- 5. Choose Select All, Backplot.
- 6. Choose **Run**. You should see the operations machined in the proper order.
- 7. When the backplot is finished, close the Operations Manager and save the file.

In this chapter, you saw how to mirror parts and toolpaths. In the next chapter, you'll learn techniques for rotating geometry and operations around a center point so you can easily draw and machine circular parts.
5 Rotating Geometry and Toolpaths

This chapter builds on the skills learned in previous chapters by focusing on a circular part, showing you techniques for orienting and rotating geometry around a center point. After you create the part, you will learn how to rotate toolpaths as well.

Exercise 1 – Creating the geometry

In this exercise, you will design a wheel with three symmetrical slots as shown in the following blueprint. You will use the following skills:

- Creating arcs, tangent arcs, and lines
- Rotating geometry
- Trimming geometry



Creating the inner and outer circles

- 1. If necessary, create a new file. Choose Main Menu, File, New.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Circ pt+dia.
- 3. Enter **200** for the diameter.
- Press [O] to select the origin for the center point. Note: Press the letter "O," not zero.
- 5. Press [Esc] and re-select Circ pt+dia.
- 6. Enter 40 for the diameter of the inner circle.
- 7. Press [O] again to select the origin for the center point.
- 8. Press [Esc] to exit the Create Arc function.
- 9. Right-click anywhere in the graphics window and choose **Fit** screen from the menu.

Creating construction lines for the slot

To rough out the slot, begin by defining the vertical edges, then rotating to the proper position.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Line, Vertical.
- 2. Select at position 1 then at position 2 (these are only approximate positions) to draw the construction guide.



- 3. Enter 10 for the X coordinate of the line.
- 62 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 4. Create a second vertical line by selecting near positions 1 and 2 again.
- 5. Enter **-10** for the X coordinate of the line. The part should look like the following picture.



- 6. Next, you will rotate one of the lines to form the other edge of a slot. Choose **Main Menu, Xform, Rotate**.
- 7. Select the left line.
- 8. Choose Done, Origin.
- 9. Choose **Operation–Copy**.
- 10. Enter a **Rotation angle** of **120**. Your values should match the following picture.

Rotate	? ×
Operation Move Copy Join	
Use construction attributes	
Number of steps:	
Rotation angle: 120.0	
<u> </u>	<u>H</u> elp

11. Choose **OK**. The line should rotate as shown in the following picture.



Create the inner and outer curves along with the fillet arcs for one of the slots.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Polar, Sketch.
- 2. Press [O] to select the origin as the center point.
- 3. Type in the radius of the outer arc: 80
- 4. Click near positions 1 and 2 in the following picture to locate the approximate starting and ending angles of the outer arc.



Note: Mastercam measures all arcs in a counterclockwise direction. The 3 o'clock position = 0° .

- 5. To create the inner arc, type [O] again to locate its center point at the origin.
- 6. Enter its radius: 40
- 7. Click near positions 3 and 4 in the previous picture to locate the arc's endpoints. The part should look like the following picture.



- 8. Now create 12 mm fillets at the four corners of the slot. Choose Main Menu, Create, Fillet, Radius.
- 9. Enter **12** for the radius.
- 10. Click on the positions shown in the following picture in order.



The part with the fillets should look like the following picture.



• Completing the first slot

To complete the first slot, you need to create the flat edge on the outside radius. First you will create the horizontal line. Then you will rotate it into position and create the arcs that connect it to the slot.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Line, Endpoints.
- 2. Enter the coordinates for the first endpoint: -12.5, 75
- 3. Enter the coordinates for the second endpoint: **12.5**, **75**. The line should look like the following picture.



- 4. Choose Main Menu, Xform, Rotate.
- 5. Select the horizontal line you just created.
- 6. Choose Done, Origin.
- 7. Choose Operation–Move.
- 8. Enter a **Rotation angle** of **-120**. Your values should match the following picture.

Rotate	? ×
Operation Move Copy Join	
Use construction attributes	
Number of steps:	
Rotation angle: -120.0	
KCancel	<u>H</u> elp

- 9. Choose **OK**. The line should rotate into position as shown in the following picture.
- 68 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



10. Zoom in on the new line. Right-click anywhere in the graphics window and choose **Zoom window**. Click once near position 1 and then near position 2.



11. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Tangent, Point.

- 12. Select the arc at position 1.
- 13. Select the endpoint of the line at position 2.



- 14. Enter the radius of the arc: 12
- 15. Since there are several possible arcs through the endpoint of the line and tangent to the arc, Mastercam asks you to select the one you want to keep. Select the arc at position 1.



- 16. Repeat steps 12–15 to create the arc at the other endpoint of the line.
- 17. Use Mastercam's Trim function to delete the segment of the outer radius between the two arcs. Choose **Main Menu, Modify, Trim, Divide**.
- 18. Select the arcs at positions 1, 2, and 3 as shown in the following picture.
- 70 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



19. Delete the construction line shown at position 4. Press [Page Down] to unzoom, if necessary.

Creating the other slots by rotating the first slot

Now that you've created the first slot, copy and rotate it about the center point to create the other two slots.

- 1. Fit the part to the screen.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Xform, Rotate, Chain.
- 3. Click anywhere on the slot.
- 4. Choose Done, Done, Origin.
- 5. In the Rotate dialog box, choose **Operation–Copy**.
- 6. Enter 2 for Number of steps.
- 7. Enter a **Rotation angle** of **120**. Your values should match the following picture.

Rotate	? ×
Operation C Move C Copy C Join	
Use construction attributes	
Number of steps: 2	
Rotation angle: 120.0	
<u> </u>	Help

8. Choose **OK**. The part should look like the following picture.



9. Save the file in your working folder as **slotted wheel.mc9**.

Exercise 2 – Cutting the slots

In this exercise, you create a toolpath to cut the slots. You will cut around the inside contour to cut the slot out completely, instead of cutting it as a pocket. You will create a toolpath for the first slot, and then add the other slots to it. You will learn the following skills:

- Cutting an inside contour
- Adding more geometry to an existing toolpath

Creating the toolpath

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Contour.
- 2. Select the start point for the chain at position 1.



The chaining direction arrow should point counterclockwise. If it doesn't, choose **Reverse** from the menu.

- 3. Choose Done.
- 4. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 5. Select the 10 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.

- 6. Select the Contour parameters tab.
- 7. Enter a **Depth** of -15. (The part is 12 mm thick, and you will cut through an additional 3 mm.) Your other parameters should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Contour parameters	
Image: Clearance 100.0 Image: Absolute Incremental Image: Absolute Incremental	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Image: Computer type: Image: Computer type: Tip comp Tip Tip comp Tip Roll cutter around corners Sharp Image: Comparison to the context of the contex
Contour type: 2D Mult Chamfer Hamp Remachining Dep	igasses 🔽 Lead in/out
	<u>QK</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 8. Select the Lead in/out check box and button.
- 9. Enter 0 for Entry Line–Length.
- 10. Enter 12 for Entry Arc-Radius.
- 11. Choose the \rightarrow button to copy the entry arc dimensions to the Exit section.
- 12. Enter an **Overlap** of **5**. Your values should match the following picture.

74 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Lead In/Out			? ×
Gouge check entry/exit motion	Overl	ap: [5.0	
		Exit	
Line		Line	
🔿 Perpendicular 💿 Tangent		🔿 Perpendicular 💿 Tangent	
Length: 0.0 % 0.0		Length: 0.0 %	0.0
Ramp height: 0.0		Ramp height:	0.0
Radius: 120.0 % 12.0		Radius: 120.0 %	12.0
Sweep: 90.0		Sweep:	90.0
Helix height:		Helix height:	0.0
Use entry point		Use exit point	
🗖 Use point depth		🔲 Use point depth	
Enter on first depth cut only		Exit on last depth cut only	
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

13. Choose **OK** twice. The toolpath should look like the following picture.



Adding the other slots to the toolpath

- 1. Choose **Operations** to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the **Geometry** icon for the toolpath.

, ,	
⊡	<u>R</u> egen Path
Parameters	<u>B</u> ackplot
eometry - (1) chain(s)	<u>∨</u> erify
	<u>P</u> ost

3. Right-click on Chain 1 and choose Add chain from the menu.

🚮 Chain	Manager	? ×
Cha	Add chain Change side Rechain all Rechain all of solid Resync all Analyze all	<u>S</u> elect
	<u>D</u> elete chain <u>R</u> everse chain	
	Rechain single <u>S</u> tart point Change at <u>p</u> oint Re <u>n</u> ame Analyze single	<u>O</u> K <u>H</u> elp

4. Click on locations 1 and 2 in the following picture to add the other two slots to the toolpath. After selecting each slot, the chaining arrow should be pointing counterclockwise. If it does not, choose **Reverse** from the menu



5. Choose **Done**. The Chain Manager displays the chains for all three slots.

🛐 Chain Manager	? X
Chain 1 Chain 2 Chain 3	Select
	<u>O</u> K <u>H</u> elp

- 6. Choose OK.
- 7. Choose Regen Path.

8. Choose **OK** after the toolpath has been regenerated. It should look like the following picture. You can see how Mastercam has automatically replicated the lead in/out moves in each of the other slots.



Exercise 3 – Rotating a toolpath

The part shown in the following picture has 30 identical slots. In this exercise, you will create a toolpath for a single slot and, instead of rotating and copying the slot, you will rotate the toolpath. Using this approach to machine the other slots means that you don't have to create geometry for them.



You will learn the following skill:

- Transforming and rotating toolpaths
- Creating the toolpath
 - 1. Open the file rotation-mm.mc9.
 - 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Contour.

3. Select the start point of the chain at position 1. The chain direction should be counterclockwise.



- 4. Choose Done.
- 5. Select a 6 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 6. Choose the Contour parameters tab.
- 7. Enter a **Depth** of **-6**. The rest of the parameters should match the following picture.

	Clearance 100.0	Compensation type:ComputerCompensation direction:LeftImage: ComputerImage: Compensation direction:Image: ComputerImage: ComputerImage: Computer OptimizeTipImage: ComputerTip compTipImage: ComputerImage: ComputerTip compTipImage: ComputerImage: ComputerRoll cutter around cornersSharpImage: ComputerImage: Computer toleranceImage: ComputerImage: ComputerMax. depth varianceImage: ComputerImage: ComputerXY stock to leaveImage: ComputerImage: ComputerZ stock to leaveImage: ComputerImage: Computer
Contour type: 2D Chamfer Ramp R	e <u>mac</u> hining,	i passes Lead in/out

- 8. Choose the Multi passes check box and button.
- 9. You will create a single roughing pass and a single finishing pass. Enter 1 for the **Roughing passes–Number** and **1.5** for **Spacing**.
- 10. Enter 1 for the Finishing passes–Number and 1 for Spacing.
- 11. Select **Keep tool down**. Your values should match the following picture.

Multi Passes	?×
Roughing passes	
Number	1
Spacing	1.5
- Finishing passes	
Number	1
Spacing	1.0
Machine finish passes at —	
C Final depth O	All depths
Keep tool down	
<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

- 12. Choose OK.
- 13. Choose the Lead in/out check box and button.
- 14. Select the **Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours** check box. This ensures that the entry and exit move will take place in the middle of the slot, instead of at the narrow end where there isn't enough room.
- 15. Enter **0** for the Entry Line–Length.
- 16. Enter **3** for the Entry Arc–Radius.
- 17. All you need for an entry arc is a partial arc, so enter **45** for the **Entry Arc–Sweep**.
- 18. Choose the button to copy the entry arc dimensions to the Exit section. Your values should match the following picture.

✓ Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours ✓ Gouge check entry/exit motion ✓ Entry └ine ○ C Perpendicular I angent Length: 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 50.0 ≋ Xweep: 45.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only Exit on last depth cut only	Lead In/Out	? ×
Fintry Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 50.0 \$2 \$3.0 Sweep: 45.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only OK	 Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours Gouge check entry/exit motion 	Overlap: 0.0
	Entry Line C Perpendicular C Perpendicular Image: Constraint of the second seco	Exit C Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 50.0 2 3.0 Sweep: 45.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use exit point Use point depth Exit on last depth cut only <u>D</u> K <u>Cancel</u> <u>Help</u>

19. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath shown in the following picture.



20. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.

Rotating the toolpath

- 1. Choose Next menu, Transform.
- 2. Choose Type–Rotate.
- 3. Choose **Method–Coordinate**. This means that each rotated toolpath will be generated by calculating the coordinates of each slot within the same plane, rather than by shifting the orientation of the tool and part for each successive slot.

Contour (2D) Contour (2D) Contour (2D) Contour (2D) Contour (2D)	Create new operations and geometric Keep this transform operation Copy source operations Disable posting in selected Source operations
Method C Tool plane C Coordinate	Subprogram Absolute Incremental Work offset numbering G Off
Group NCI output by O Operation order Unique subprograms O Operation type	Maintain source operation s Assign new Start Increment Match existing offsets

Your selections should match the following picture.

- 4. Choose the **Rotate** tab.
- 5. Choose Origin for the Rotate point.
- 6. Enter 29 for the Number of steps.
- 7. Enter a Start angle of 12 and a Rotation angle of 12 (because $360^\circ \div 30 = 12$).
- 8. Choose OK. The toolpath should look like the following picture.



You can see in the preceding picture that no new geometry has been created for the new slots; only the original slot has the geometry. All of the tool movements for the 29 other slots are contained in the single Transform operation as shown in the following picture.



9. Save the file as rotation1.mc9.

Rotating the part with an indexer

The previous procedure assumes that the part remains stationary on the table and the tool moves around it. This procedure shows you how to cut the multiple slots when you are using a rotary indexer to rotate the part.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the Transform operation.
- 3. Change the transform method to Tool plane.
- 4. Select the **Subprogram** option. Make sure that **Incremental** is selected. Your selections should match the following picture.

Transform Operation Paramete	215	? ×			
Type and Methods Translate Botate Mirror					
Type and Methods Translate	Rotate Mirror Source operations 	Create new operations and geometry Keep this transform operation Copy source operations Disable posting in selected Source operations Statutoprogram			
Group NCl output by		C Absolute C Incremental Work offset numbering C Off C Maintain source operation's			
 Operation order Unique subprograms Operation type 	Comment	Assign new Start Increment			
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp			

Note: Some posts may not support subprograms. If your post does not, leave the Subprogram option unchecked.

- 5. Choose **OK**.
- 6. Choose Regen Path.
- 7. Choose Select All, Post.

86 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 8. If necessary, choose **Change Post** and select the proper post for your machine.
- 9. Make sure your other values match the following dialog box and choose **OK**.

Post processing	? ×
Active post	Change <u>P</u> ost
MPFAN.PST	
-NCI file	
🔲 Save NCI file	📕 E dit
C Overwrite	
🖸 Ask	
NC file	
🔽 Save NC file	🔽 Edit
C Overwrite	NC extension
 Ask 	.nc
F Send to machine	Co <u>m</u> m
<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ance	<u>H</u> elp

- 10. When prompted, save the NC file as **indexer.nc** in the default folder.
- 11. When the NC program appears in the editor window, scroll down until you see the lines shown in the following picture. You can see the A codes used to increment the indexer.

```
MILL\NC\INDEXER.NC
N140X76.94R3.734
N142G1X36.138Y.15
N144G3Y-.15R.151
N146G1X56.539Y-1.935
N148G3X58.729Y-1.245R3.
N150G0Z50.
N152G55X56.67Y-.441Z50.A12.
N154M98P0001
N202G90G56X56.67Y-.441Z50.A24.
N2 04M98P 0001
N252G90G57X56.67Y-.441Z50.A36.
N254M98P0001
N302G90G58X56.67Y-.441Z50.A48.
N3 04M98P 0001
N352G90G59X56.67Y-.441Z50.A60.
N354M98P0001
N402G90G54.1P1X56.67Y-.441Z50.A72.
N404M98P0001
N452G90G54.1P2X56.67Y-.441Z50.A84.
N454M98P0001
N502G90G54.1P3X56.67Y-.441Z50.A96.
N5 04M98P 0001
```

- 12. Close the editor window.
- 13. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 14. Press [Alt + A] to save the file.

You've now seen a number of techniques for creating 2D geometry and toolpaths. The next chapter introduces you to creating 3D geometry and toolpaths.

6 Creating Drill Toolpaths

Mastercam includes many types of drill toolpaths and offers many different techniques to create them. This chapter introduces you to some basic techniques. The first exercise shows you how to construct a simple drill toolpath by selecting arcs. In the second exercise, you will change one of the arcs and regenerate the drilling operation. The third exercise shows you how to drill at different depths and combine multiple drilling operations on the same holes.

Exercise 1 – Creating a basic drill toolpath

This exercise introduces to some basic techniques for creating drill toolpaths. You will learn the following skills:

- Using a mask to select arcs for the drill toolpath
- Sorting points to set the drilling order
- Filtering the tool library
- Creating the drill toolpath

You will create the gasket shown in the following picture.



Creating the drill holes

- 1. Choose Main Menu, File, Get.
- 2. Open the file gasket-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorial\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 3. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Circ pt + dia.
- 4. Enter a diameter of **6** in the prompt area.
- 5. Mastercam prompts you for the center point of the first 6 mm arc. Since you want to locate the new arcs at the center of the arcs that are already in the drawing, press [C], then select the arc as shown in the following picture. Mastercam automatically places the new arc at the center.



6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for each of the remaining arcs shown in the following picture.



Your part should now look like the following picture.



7. Press [Esc] to exit the Create Arc function.

Choosing holes for the drill toolpath

To specify which arcs will be the drill holes for the toolpath, you will use the **Mask on arc** feature. This lets you select an arc in your drawing and have Mastercam automatically choose all the arcs that match it.

1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Drill.

- 2. Choose Mask on arc.
- 3. Select any of the 6 mm holes.
- 4. Press [Enter] to accept the default tolerance value.
- 5. Choose Window.
- 6. Click above and to the left of the part, and drag a rectangle that encloses the whole part. Click at the lower-right corner.
- 7. Choose Done. Mastercam selects all the 6 mm holes.
- 8. The lines joining the holes show the order in which they will be drilled. To select a more efficient pattern, choose **Options**.
- 9. Choose the **Point to Point** sorting button as shown in the following picture.

Point Sorting
2D sort Rotary sort Cross sort
Sort Method
<u> </u>

- 10. Choose OK.
- 11. When Mastercam prompts you to select the starting point, select the arc in the lower-left corner. The holes should be sorted as shown in the following picture.

92 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



12. Choose Done.

Using the Tool Library filter to select a tool

As soon as you choose **Done** in the previous procedure, Mastercam automatically displays the Simple drill - no peck dialog box where you can select a drill and set other drill parameters.

- 1. Right-click in the tool display area and choose Get tool from library.
- 2. Choose the Filter button.
- 3. Choose the None button to cancel the current filter setting.
- 4. Choose the **Drill** button as shown in the following picture. This means that when you return to the Tools Manager window, you will see only drills, making it easier to select the proper tool.

Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 93

Tool List Filter	
Tool Types	Too Igr Rad I
<u>All</u> <u>N</u> one	
Operation masking Unit masking Used by operations No unit masking	
<u>R</u> eset all	

- 5. Choose OK.
- 6. Select the 6 mm HSS drill and choose **OK**.

Setting the drilling parameters

- 1. Choose the **Simple drill no peck** tab.
- 2. Enter –6 in the **Depth** field. Your other values should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Simple drill - no peck	Custom Drill Parameters 1		1
	Clearance 100.0 Cy CAbsolute C Incremental D Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 Absolute C Incremental Iop of stock 0.0 C Absolute C Incremental Depth I-6.0	vole Irill/Counterbore 1st peck Subsequent peck Peck Chip break	2.0 2.0 2.0 2.0 2.0 0.0
	Absolute O Incremental	Shift	0.0
Tip comp	Subprogram C Absolute C Incremental		
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

- 3. Choose the **Tip comp** check box and button.
- 4. Make sure your values match the following picture and choose **OK**.





- 5. Choose **OK** again. Mastercam generates the drill toolpath.
- 6. Choose the green **Gview–Isometric** button from the toolbar to see the toolpath more clearly. It should look like the following picture.



7. Choose Main Menu, File, Save and save the part in your working folder as new gasket.mc9.

Exercise 2 – Changing the size of a drill hole

Your customer told you that one of the drill holes needs to have a 12 mm diameter instead of a 6 mm diameter. One way to do this is to delete the hole and create a new hole in its place. Then, create a new drill toolpath for the new hole with a larger drill. Because each operation in Mastercam can have only a single tool, the different drill size requires a new operation. In this exercise, you will learn the following skill:

• Creating a new drill toolpath for a different size hole

Drawing the new hole

Delete the existing hole, then draw the new one in its place.



- 1. Choose the green **Gview–Top** button to switch out of isometric view.
- 2. Choose the **Delete** button from the toolbar.
- 3. Select the arc shown in the following picture.

96 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial


4. Choose **Yes** when you see the following warning message.



- 5. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Circ pt+dia.
- 6. Enter a diameter of **12**.
- 7. Press [C] and select one of the arcs which surround the location of the deleted arc.

Creating the drill toolpath for the new hole

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Drill, Manual.
- 2. Press [C] and select the new 12 mm hole.
- 3. Press [Esc].
- 4. To select the start point, select the 12 mm hole again.
- 5. Choose Done.
- 6. Select the 12 mm HSS drill from the tool library.
- 7. Choose the **Simple drill no peck** tab.

8. Make sure the drill parameters match the following picture. They should be the same values you entered for the first drilling operation.

Tool parameters Simple drill - no peck	Custom Drill Parameters 1	
Tip comp	Clearance 100.0 Cy Clearance 100.0 Cy Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 Absolute C Incremental Iop of stock 0.0 Absolute C Incremental Depth 6.0 m Absolute C Incremental C Absolute C Incremental C Absolute C Incremental C Absolute C Incremental	cle rill/Counterbore 1 st peck 2.0 Subsequent peck 2.0 Peck 2.0 Chip break 2.0 Dwell 0.0 Shift 0.0
		<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Note: Mastercam automatically calculates a new tip comp for the new 12 mm drill, so you do not have to choose **Tip comp** again.

- 9. Choose **OK**. Mastercam calculates the drill toolpath for the new hole.
- 10. Choose **Operations**. You should see two toolpaths listed. The first toolpath is marked with a red X, as shown in the following picture. This means that it needs to be regenerated. Because you deleted a hole, the toolpath has to be updated.



- 11. Click on the first operation to select it. The blue check mark on the folder tells you that it is selected.
- 12. Choose **Regen Path** to regenerate the toolpath.

Backplotting the toolpaths

- 1. Choose Select All.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. Choose the green Gview–Isometric button from the toolbar.
- 4. Press [S] to step through the toolpaths. The completed toolpaths should look like the following picture.



- 5. Choose **OK** when the backplot is done.
- 6. Choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.
- 7. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.

8. Press [Alt + A] and choose **OK** to save the file.

Exercise 3 – Drilling at different Z depths

Some parts require you to drill holes starting at different Z depths. With Mastercam, you can select all the points at one time even if they lie at different Z depths, and you can include them in the same drilling operation. In this exercise, you will see how to use incremental values to set the drilling parameters so that you only need to create one set of parameters for all the holes.

Also, in this exercise, you will perform multiple drilling operations on each hole. First, you will predrill the holes with a center drill. Then, you will drill the holes to their proper dimension. You will learn the following skills:

- Creating a drill toolpath for multiple Z depths
- Using incremental values to set drill parameters
- Predrilling holes
- Using viewports to look at your part from several angles

Predrilling with the centerdrill

- 1. Open the file tab-mm.mc9.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Drill, Window pts.
- 3. Click above and to the left of the part and drag a window as shown in the following picture. Click the mouse when done.



4. Mastercam prompts you to select a starting point. Select the point shown in the following picture.



The drill order should look like the following picture.



Note: If your drill order doesn't match the preceding picture, choose **Options** from the menu, and choose the **Point-to-point** sorting method as shown in the following picture.



Then, select the starting point as shown above.

- 5. Choose Done.
- 102 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 6. Choose the 5 mm HSS center drill from the tool library. If necessary, clear the **Filter active** check box to see the center drills.
- 7. Choose the **Simple drill no peck** tab.
- 8. Select the **Clearance** check box and enter **6**. Make sure **Absolute** is selected. Because the holes are at different Z depths, it is important to have an absolute clearance plane distinct from the retract height to ensure that the drill will clear all areas of the part as it moves from hole to hole.
- 9. Change **Retract** to **Incremental** and enter a value of **2**.
- 10. Change **Top of stock** to **Incremental**. This means that the top of stock for each hole will change according to its Z depth. Since the depth and retract are also incremental, those values will be measured from the top of stock and will therefore also change with each hole's Z depth.
- 11. Enter a **Depth** of **-2** and choose **Incremental**.
- 12. Choose the **Tip comp** check box and button.
- 13. Enter a **Breakthrough amount** of **0**. Your values should match the following picture.



- 14. Choose OK.
- 15. Verify that your values match the following picture.

Tool parameters Simple drill - no peck	Custom Drill Parameters 1		1
	Clearance 6.0 Cy Absolute C Incremental D Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 2.0 Absolute Incremental Iop of stock 0.0 Absolute Incremental Depth2.0 Imiliar	rill/Counterbore	2.0 2.0 2.0 2.0 2.0 0.0
	C Absolute C Incremental		
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

16. Choose **OK** to generate the drill toolpath. It should look like the following picture.



Drilling the holes

To create the second drill toolpath, you will copy the first drilling operation and edit the parameters.

- 1. Choose **Operations**.
- 2. Right-click on the drilling operation, drag it down as shown in the following picture, and release the mouse.



- 3. Choose Copy after from the menu.
- 4. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the second toolpath.



- 5. Choose the **Tool parameters** tab.
- 6. Select the 6 mm HSS drill from the tool library.
- 7. Choose the **Simple drill no peck** tab.
- 8. Change the **Depth** to **-10**. Your drill parameters should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Simple drill - no peck	Custom Drill Parameters 1		
	 Clearance Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract Absolute C Incremental 	Cycle Drill/Counterbore 1st peck Subsequent peck	2.0
	Iop of stock 0.0 C Absolute Incremental Depth -10.0 C Absolute Incremental	Peck Chip break Dwell Shift	2.0 2.0 0.0
Tip comp	C Absolute C Incremental		
		<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

- 9. Choose Tip comp.
- 10. Enter a Breakthrough amount of 1.
- 11. Choose OK twice.
- 12. Choose Regen Path. Mastercam regenerates the second toolpath.

Backplotting with viewports

Now you can use the Viewports function to backplot the toolpaths. Viewports are display layouts that combine different part views on the same screen. The different views update simultaneously, making this feature ideal for backplotting toolpaths.

- 1. Choose Select All.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. Press [Alt + W].

4. Choose the viewport indicated by the following picture.



5. Press [S] to step through the toolpaths. Your screen should look like the following picture.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 107

- 6. Press **OK** when Mastercam tells you the backplot is finished.
- 7. Choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.
- 8. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 9. Save the file in your working folder as drilled tab.mc9.

You've now seen a number of techniques for creating 2D geometry and toolpaths. The next chapter introduces you to creating 3D geometry and toolpaths.

7 Working in 3D

This chapter guides you through the design of a 3D wireframe part. You will use Cplanes and the View Manager to work on the part in different 3D orientations. In the final exercise, you will create a drill toolpath to drill upwards into the part from the bottom. The part you'll be creating is the housing shown in the following picture. The top edge is defined by a 3D contour, and there are four small mounting holes on the bottom edge.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 109

Exercise 1 – Creating 3D geometry

In this exercise, you will use many of the same drawing techniques you used in previous chapters and exercises, but this time in 3D. You will learn the following skills.

- Orienting geometry by choosing Cplanes
- Orienting geometry by setting the Z depth

The following pictures show the dimensions of the 3D contour. For clarity, only the outer boundary of the top edge of the part is shown here.



Orienting geometry in 3D

Mastercam uses construction planes (Cplanes) to orient twodimensional entities, such as lines and arcs, in 3D space. Cplanes 1–6 align with a face of a cube. All of your work so far has been done in the Top Cplane, as if you were looking down on the top of the part. Whenever you switch to a different Cplane, it has the effect of rotating the XY coordinate plane to align with the selected face. The Z axis always corresponds to moving towards or away from the part.

Once you select the Cplane, set the Z depth to tell Mastercam how deep to create the geometry. All of your work so far has been at a Z depth of 0. Choose a different Z depth to create new geometry above or below other geometry.

Complete the steps in this procedure to see the effects of selecting Cplanes and Z depth before drawing the actual part.

1. If necessary, choose **Main Menu**, **File**, **New** to create a blank Mastercam drawing.

The Secondary Menu tells you how new geometry will be oriented:



- 2. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Circ pt + dia.
- 3. Enter a diameter of 25.
- 4. Press [O] to locate the circle's center point at the origin. Press the letter "O," not zero.
- 5. Press [F9] to display the coordinate axes.



6. Choose the green **Gview–Isometric** button from the toolbar to display the circle in 3 dimensions. Your screen should look like the following picture.





- 7. Choose the blue **Cplane–Front** button from the toolbar to change the Cplane.
- 8. Press [O] again to create a new circle with its center point at the origin. You can see that the center point is the same, but the second circle is now aligned with the front of the part.



- 9. Choose the Z button from the Secondary Menu.
- 10. Type **-40** and press [Enter]. The new Z depth appears on the button.

Z: 40.000

11. Press [O] again. Another circle appears with its center point at the origin. It is aligned with the same plane as the previous circle, but shifted 40 mm into the part because of the new Z depth, as shown in the following picture.





- 12. Choose the blue **Cplane–Side** button from the toolbar to align new geometry with the left side of the part.
- 13. Choose Z and enter 75.
- 14. Choose Backup, Circ pt + dia.
- 15. Press [Enter] to accept the diameter of 25.
- 16. Enter the coordinates X-25,Y10 to create the first circle.
- 17. Enter the coordinate **X25** to create a second circle. The new circles are aligned with the left face of the part, 75 mm in front of the system origin, as shown in the following picture.



18. Choose **Main Menu, File, New** to clear the geometry from the screen. Choose **No** when prompted to save the file.

Note: After choosing File, New, the Cplane and Gview are reset to Top and the Z depth is reset to 0.

Creating the first construction lines

Now that you've gotten a feel for creating geometry in 3D, you can begin drawing the part. You will begin by drawing the top-front corner.

- 1. Press [F9] to display the coordinate axes.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Create, Line, Horizontal.
- 3. Draw the line at position 1.
- 4. Enter the Y coordinate: -80



- 5. Draw the line at position 2.
- 6. Enter the Y coordinate: 0
- 7. Choose Backup, Vertical.
- 8. Draw the line at position 3.
- 9. Enter the X coordinate: 0
- 10. Draw the line at position 4.

Tip: If you need more space to finish drawing the line, press the [Down arrow] key a few times.

11. Enter the X coordinate: 60

114 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Trimming the lines

Complete the upper corner of the part by trimming the lines and adding the fillet.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Modify, Trim, 1 entity.
- 2. Select the lines at positions 1, 2, 3, and 4 in that order.





- 3. Choose the **Delete** button on the toolbar.
- 4. Click on lines 2 and 4 as shown in the preceding picture to delete them.
- 5. Choose Main Menu, Create, Fillet, Radius.
- 6. Enter the fillet radius: 36
- 7. Click on each of the two remaining lines. When you are done, the part should look like the following picture.

Drawing the front face

In this procedure, you will draw the curve on the front face of the part.

- 1. Set the **Gview** to **Isometric**.
- 2. Set the Cplane to Front.
- 3. Choose the Z button.
- 4. Select the line shown in the following picture to set the Z depth to 80.



- 5. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Tangent, 1 entity.
- 6. Select the line again at position 1.



- 7. Choose the tangent point by selecting the endpoint at position 2.
- 8. Enter the radius of **24**.
- 9. Select the arc shown in the picture at right.



- 10. Choose Main Menu, Create, Line, Horizontal.
- 11. Draw the line as shown in the following picture.

Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 117



- 12. Enter a Y coordinate of **-47.74**.
- 13. Choose Main Menu, Create, Fillet, Radius.
- 14. Enter **48** for the fillet radius.
- 15. Select the arc and line at positions 1 and 2.



16. Select the fillet shown in the following picture.



The part should look like the following picture.



Drawing the bottom edge

To draw the bottom edge, you need to use two Cplanes. You need the Side Cplane to draw the small arc in the center, and the Top Cplane to draw the arc which joins it to the front face.

- 1. Set the Cplane to **Top**.
- 2. Choose the Z button.

3. Select the lower line to set the Z depth to -47.74.



- 4. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Polar, Start pt.
- 5. Choose **Endpoint**. Now when you select geometry, the AutoCursor will only highlight on endpoints.
- 6. Select the endpoint of the fillet as shown in the following picture.



- 7. Enter **50** for the radius.
- 8. Enter an initial angle of **270**.
- 9. Enter a final angle of **0**. The part should look like the following picture.

120 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



10. Delete the line as shown in the preceding picture. Your part should now look like the following picture.



Drawing the arc on the side of the part

- 1. Set the Cplane to Side.
- 2. Choose the Z button.
- 3. Press [E] to lock the selection on endpoints and select the arc as shown in the following picture.



The Z depth should be 177.79.

- 4. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Polar, End pt.
- 5. Select the endpoint of the arc as shown in the following picture.



- 6. Enter **30** for the radius of the new arc you're creating.
- 7. Enter **0** for the initial angle.
- 8. Enter **180** for the final angle. The part should look like the following picture.



Finishing the contour by mirroring the geometry

Now that you've completed half of the contour, you can create the other half by mirroring what you've already created.

- 1. Set the Cplane to **Top**.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Xform, Mirror, Chain, Partial.
- 3. Select the starting point for the chain at position 1.



- 4. Select the end of the chain at position 2. Notice that the final arc was not chosen; the selected geometry will fit around it when you mirror it.
- 5. Choose Done, Done, X axis.

6. Choose **Operation–Copy**.

Mirror		? ×
	Operation C Move C Copy C Join	
	Use construction Mirror label and	n attributes note text
	<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

7. Choose **OK**. The completed contour should look like the following picture.



8. Choose **Main Menu, File, Save** and save the part in your working folder as **3D cover.mc9**.

Exercise 2 – Drawing the bottom of the part

In this exercise, you will draw the bottom edge of the part and add the four mounting holes. The following pictures show you the necessary dimensions.



You will use the following skills:

- Copying geometry with the Translate function
- Offsetting a contour
- Using dynamic Gviews
- Using the View Manager to change the orientation of the coordinate system.

• Using the new system view to work on the bottom of the part

Drawing the bottom contour

First, you will project the four corners to the Z depth of the bottom of the part. Then you will join them with new lines.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Xform, Translate, Chain, Partial.
- 2. Select the endpoint of the corner arc at position 1.



The corner of the arc should be highlighted:



3. Select the endpoint of the other corner arc as shown in position 2 in the preceding picture. The selected geometry should look like the following picture.

126 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



- 4. Choose Done, Done, Rectang.
- 5. Enter a translation vector of Z-120.
- 6. Choose **Operation–Join**. This tells Mastercam to create guidelines connecting the copy to the original geometry.

Translate	? ×
Operation C Move C Copy	
Join Use construction attributes Number of steps:	
<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	,

7. Choose **OK**. The part should look like the following picture.



- 8. To translate the other corners, choose the arcs at position 1 and 2.
- 9. Choose Done, Rectang.
- 10. Enter **Z-72.26**.
- 11. Choose **OK** at the Translate dialog box.
- 12. Fit the part on the screen. It should look like the following picture.



13. Choose the Z button and click on any of the new arcs on the bottom of the part. The Z depth should be set to -120.000.

14. Choose **Main Menu, Create, Line, Endpoints**. Choose points 1 and 2 in the following picture to create a line joining them.



- 15. Choose points 3, 4, 5, and 6 to complete the other lines.
- 16. Press [Esc] when you are done. Your part should look like the following picture.



Drawing the inner boundary

To draw the inner boundaries of the top and bottom edges, you will create an offset copy of the outer boundaries that you just drew. The difference between translating and offsetting is that the translate function just copies the geometry to the new position, while the offset function adjusts the size and scale of the copy as needed to maintain the offset distance.

1. Choose Main Menu, Xform, Ofs ctour.



- 2. You will shift your viewing angle slightly so that you can easily select just the entities that comprise the top edge. Choose the green **Gview–Dynamic** button from the toolbar.
- 3. Click anywhere in the bottom half of the graphic window and drag the mouse upward until the part looks like the following picture. Notice that the viewing angle changes as you move the mouse.



Click the mouse again to freeze the view in this position.

- 4. Choose Window.
- 5. Click above and to the left of the part and drag a window as shown in the following picture. Include the entire top edge, but none of the bottom edge. Click the mouse when done.



- 6. When prompted to enter a search point, click near the position indicated in the preceding picture. The entire top edge should highlight.
- 7. Choose **Done**.
- 8. Choose **Operation–Copy**.
- 9. Choose Right for Offset direction.
- 10. Enter a **Distance** of **10**. Your selections should match the following picture.

Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 131

Offset Contour		? ×
- Operation		
C Move		
🖲 Сору		
Number of steps:		1
Corners	Offset	
C None	C Left	
Sharp	Right	
O All	Distance:	10.0
🔽 Infinite look ahe	ead	
2D Contour		
Offset depth:		0.0
C Absolute	Increme	ental
Linearization tolerar	nce:	0.001
Max depth variance	e:	0.005
Taper angle:		0.0
<u> </u>	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

11. Choose **OK**. The inner boundary should appear as shown in the following picture.



12. Choose **Window** to begin offsetting the bottom edge.

132 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial
13. Draw a window around the bottom edge.



- 14. When prompted for a search point, click near the position indicated in the preceding picture.
- 15. Choose Done.
- 16. Choose **OK** when the Offset Contour dialog box appears, since you will use all the same values as before. Your part should look like the following picture.



Switching the system view

Now you need to create the holes on the bottom of the part. In this procedure, you will switch the system view from Top to Bottom so that you can work more easily on the bottom of the part. Switching the system view means that the entire coordinate system shifts; even the orientation of the Cplanes and Gviews changes so that they are relative to the new system view.

- 1. Switch to **Gview–Isometric** to cancel the dynamic Gview you've been working in.
- WCS: T 2. Choose the WCS button from the Secondary Menu. The View Manager dialog box displays.
 - 3. Under System Views Display, choose All.
 - 4. Activate **System View–Bottom** by selecting the **WCS** column for **V# 4** as shown in the following picture.
 - 5. Select the **Update graphics view when changing WCS** check box. Your selections should match the following picture.

	-				
iew list					
					Select icon
∨#	Wo	Name		Ops	Dis WCS
1		SYSTEM VIEW 1 - TOP			
2		SYSTEM VIEW 2 - FRONT			
3		SYSTEM VIEW 3-BALK			\w/
5		SYSTEM VIEW 5 - RIGHT			
6		SYSTEM VIEW 6 - LEFT			
/		SYSTEM VIEW 7-ISU SYSTEM VIEW 8-6X0N0METBIC			/
Č					
					/
0	None Views 1		elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths		Info
C C	None Views 1		elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths		Info
me	None Views 1		elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths		Info
me STEM	None Views 1 VIEW 4		elated to WCS view ielated to selected view lot used in toolpaths Attributes Work Offset # -1		Info
me STEM	None Views 1		elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths Attributes Work Offset # 1		Info
me STEM	None Views 1		elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths Attributes Work. Offset # 1 Color 0		Info
me STEM nment	None Views 1 VIEW 4	BOTTOM	elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths Attributes Work Offset # 1 Color 0 Color 0	offset #	Info Get unique Get conflicts
me STEM nment rigin (in	None Views 1 VIEW 4	BOTTOM	elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths Work Offset # 1 Color 0 Color 0 Check for work	offset #	Get unique Get unique conflicts nent to NCI
me STEM nment rigin (in ; 0.0	None Views 1 VIEW 4 - view co	BOTTOM	elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths Work Offset # -1 Color 0 Check for work Check for work Update graphics vie	offset # id comm	Get unique Get unique conflicts nent to NCI
me STEM nment rigin (in : 0.0	None Views 1	BOTTOM	elated to WCS view elated to selected view lot used in toolpaths Work Offset # -1 Color 0 Check for work Check for work Update graphics vie	offset # rd comm	Get unique conflicts nent to NCI

6. Choose OK.



7. Choose the **Screen–Fit** button from the toolbar. You should now be looking at the part in an isometric view from the bottom.

Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 135



Drawing the holes on the bottom

- 1. Choose the **Z** button and click anywhere on the bottom edge of the part. The Z depth should be **120.000**.
- 2. Switch the Gview to Top and fit the part in the screen. Since you switched to System View–Bottom, all of the Gviews have also flipped over, like the isometric view in the preceding picture. So now when you select Gview–Top, you are actually looking at the bottom of the part. It should look like the following picture.



- 3. Now create the holes. Choose Main Menu, Create, Arc, Circ pt + dia.
- 4. Enter **5** for the diameter.

136 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 5. Choose Relative, Midpoint.
- 6. Select arc 1 as shown in the following picture.



- 7. Choose Polar.
- 8. Enter 5 for the relative distance.
- 9. Enter **45** for the relative angle.
- 10. Repeat steps 5 through 8 for arc 2.
- 11. Enter **135** for the relative angle.
- 12. Repeat steps 5 through 8 for arc 3.
- 13. Enter 225 for the relative angle.
- 14. Repeat steps 5 through 8 for arc 4.
- 15. Enter **315** for the angle. The part should look like the following picture.

Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 137



Exercise 3 – Creating a drill toolpath in the new system view

In this exercise, you will create a drill toolpath to drill the holes from the bottom. By using System View–Bottom, you can use standard values for the drilling parameters; Mastercam uses the system view selection to automatically orient the geometry of the drilling motions. For example, you will still use a minus–Z value for the depth since you're drilling into the part, even though the drilling direction is upward.

Creating the drillpath

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Drill, Manual, Center.
- 2. Select hole number 1 in the following picture.



- 3. Choose **Center** and hole # 2.
- 4. Repeat step 3 for holes 3 and 4.
- 5. Press [Esc].

Note: If you are prompted for a starting point, choose the first hole.

- 6. Choose **Done** to accept the default drilling order. The Drill parameters dialog box displays.
- 7. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 8. Choose the 5 mm HSS drill and choose OK.
- 9. Choose the Simple drill no peck tab.
- 10. Select Incremental for Retract.
- 11. Select Incremental for Top of Stock and enter a value of 0.
- 12. Select **Incremental** for **Depth** and enter a value of -15. Make sure your other values match the following picture.

Tool parameters Simple drill - no peck	Custom Drill Parameters 1	
Tool parameters Simple drill - no peck	Custom Drill Parameters 1 Clearance 100.0 Cyc C Absolute C Incremental Dri Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 C Absolute C Incremental Iop of stock 0.0 C Absolute C Incremental	Ile II/Counterbore Ist peck Subsequent peck Chip break Dual
	C Absolute C Incremental	Shift 0.0
Tip comp	C Absolute C Incremental	,
		<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

13. Choose OK. Mastercam generates the drill toolpath.

Backplotting the toolpath

Backplot the toolpath in the current WCS and then in the original WCS to see the difference.

- 1. Choose Operations, Backplot.
- 2. Set the Gview to **Isometric** so you can see the drilling action more clearly.
- 3. Press [S] repeatedly to backplot through the drill path. It should look like the following picture.



- 4. Choose **OK** when the backplot is complete.
- 5. Choose the WCS button from the Secondary Menu.
- 6. Under System Views Display, choose All.
- Activate System View–Top by selecting the WCS column for V# 1.
- 8. Make sure that **Update graphics view when changing WCS** is selected. Your selections should match the following picture.

140 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

<u>сла</u>	1	1		LD:	Luce
VĦ	Wo	Name	Ups	Dis	WUS
2		SYSTEM VIEW 1-TUP SYSTEM VIEW 2- EDONT			W
3		SYSTEM VIEW 3-BACK		_	_
4		SYSTEM VIEW 4 - BOTTOM	X		
5		SYSTEM VIEW 5 - RIGHT			
6		SYSTEM VIEW 6 - LEFT			
<u>/</u>		SYSTEM VIEW 7 - ISU			
0 9		SYSTEM VIEW OF ANONOMETRIC		-	
žo		SYSTEM VIEW			
10	1	I STSTEM VIEW			
10 11		SYSTEM VIEW			
10 11 Syste	m views (None	display (11) C All Related to WCS view Related to selected to	/		nfo
Syste	m views None Views 1 -	SYSTEM VIEW display (11) All Related to WCS view Related to selected v Not used in toolpaths	, iew		nfo
Syste	m views (None Views 1 -	SYSTEM VIEW display (11) All All All All Attributes Attributes CAL	, iew		nfo
Syste C C Ne STEM	m views o None Views 1 -	SYSTEM VIEW display (11) All Related to WCS view All Related to selected v Related to selected v All Not used in toolpaths TOP Vork Offset #	riew	I Ge	nfo
Syste C C TEM	m views (None Views 1 -	SYSTEM VIEW SYSTEM VIEW display (11) C All C Color C Color C C Color C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C C	, iew iew -1	Ge	nfo t unique
Syster C C TEM ment	m views o None Views 1 -	SYSTEM VIEW SYSTEM VIEW display (11) C All C All TOP TOP Color ordinates)	iew iew i -1 0 f or offset	Ge	nfo t unique

- 9. Choose OK.
- 10. If necessary, fit the part in the screen.
- 11. Press [S] repeatedly to backplot through the drill path. You should see the part in its normal orientation, with the tool drilling up into the part from the bottom. It should look like the following picture.



- 12. Choose **OK** when the backplot ends.
- 13. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 14. Press [Alt + A] and choose **OK** to save the file.

Now that you've seen a variety of drilling techniques, you're ready to progress to Mastercam's circle milling functions, including thread milling and slot milling.

8 Using Circle Toolpaths

This chapter shows you how to use Mastercam's circle toolpaths to perform a variety of different milling operations:

- ◆ circle milling
- helical boring
- ♦ slot milling

In addition, you will see several other Mastercam features:

- Auto drilling, which lets you automatically create many different drilling operations at the same time, instead of creating each operation individually.
- Remachining, which lets you efficiently remove the stock left over from a previous operation without cutting the entire contour again.

The part that you will create is the mounting plate shown in the following picture. For this exercise, you will assume that it is a subassembly of a larger part. Because of this, the part doesn't lie flat, but is oriented at an angle in 3D space. You will use the View Manager to create a custom view aligned to the part geometry. This will let you look at the part and create toolpaths as if the part were lying flat. Mastercam then automatically translates all the toolpath geometry for you.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 143

Exercise 1 – Creating a custom view

In this exercise, you will examine the part and create a custom view using the View Manager. This will let you:

- shift the standard system views so that they are aligned with the part geometry.
- move the construction origin to a location convenient to the part geometry.

You can then use the new view to create toolpaths while the part appears flat. If you wish, you can even use the View Manager to associate a specific work offset with a view. In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating and naming a custom view
- Orienting views to part geometry

Examining the part

Before creating the new view, review the part and its orientation.

- 1. Open the file **mounting plate-mm.mc9** from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Press [F9] to display the coordinate axes.
- Press [Page Down] several times to zoom out until you can see the part and axes at the same time. Even though the Gview: T button on the Secondary Menu says that you are looking at the part from the top, you can see that it appears skewed.





4. Choose the green **Gview–Front** button. Your part should look like the following picture.





- If necessary, choose the Screen-Fit button to see the whole part.
- 5. Choose the green **Gview–Side** button. Your part should look like the following picture.



If necessary, choose the Screen-Fit button to see the whole part.



- 6. You can see that the part isn't aligned with any of the standard views. Choose the green **Gview–Top** button to return to the Top view.
- 7. Press [F9] to turn off the axes display.

Creating the custom view
 WCS: T
 Choose the WCS button on the Secondary Menu to display the View Manager.

2. Right-click in the Views list and choose **Create**, **Select menu** from the menu. This lets you create a new view based on your part geometry, and displays the Select menu so you can choose the geometry from the graphics window.



- 3. Choose Entity.
- 4. Select the arc as shown in the following picture.



A new set of coordinate axes appears.

5. You want the arc to align with the XY plane. Choose **Next** to rotate the new axes to the desired orientation shown in the following picture.

146 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



- 6. Choose **Save**. You will return to the View Manager, where you can see the new view listed.
- 7. Choose **None** under **System views display**. The new view will be listed as shown in the following picture.

∨#	Wo	Name	Ops	Dis	WCS
10		NEW VIEW #1		Х	
1		SYSTEM VIEW - WCS			W

- 8. In the Name field, type in the following name for the view: Part WCS
- 9. In the **Comment** field, type the following comment: **New** coordinate system aligned with top edge of large opening

When you post the file, the comment will appear in the NC code created by the post processor.

10. Choose the **WCS** column in the new **Part WCS** line. The "W" should move there. Your View Manager selections should match the following picture.

					Selec	ct icon
∨#	Wo	Name		Ops	Dis	WCS
10		PART WCS			X	W
me	<u>~</u>		Attributes			
ame NRT WO	S		Attributes		Get	unique
ime RTWC mment w coori ening	:S dinate sy	stem aligned with top edge of large	Attributes Work Offset # -1 Color 10	_	Get	: unique
ime RT WC mment w coorri ening trigin (in	CS dinate sy view co	stem aligned with top edge of large	Attributes Work Offset # -1 Color 10	offset ‡	Get E	: unique
Ime IRT WC Imment ening Irigin (in (Insert (insert	CS dinate sy view cor 82282	stem aligned with top edge of large ordinates) Y 288.0 Z 118.69024	Attributes Work Offset # -1 Color 10	offset ‡	Get E t conflict nent to N	: unique ts NCI

- 11. Choose **OK** to return to the graphics window.
- 12. Press [F9] to see the new coordinate axes (in blue) and the original system coordinate axes (in brown). The new axes should look like the following picture.



Notice that the origin is automatically located at the center of the arc.

- 13. Press [F9] again to clear the axes from the screen.
- 14. Choose the **Gview–Top** button from the toolbar. If necessary, choose the **Screen–Fit** button. The part appears as if you are looking straight down on it.



15. Choose **Main Menu, File, Save** and save the file to your working folder with the name **new wcs.mc9**.

Exercise 2 – Machining the outside contour

In this exercise, you will machine the outside contour of the part. You will use two different operations. First, you will use a 2D contour toolpath to rough out the contour. Then, you will use a remachining toolpath to remove the stock from the corners that the larger roughing tool couldn't reach. You will see how Mastercam automatically figures out how much stock was left by the larger tool, to create an efficient cutting path for the remachining operation.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Using depth cuts and multiple passes in a contour toolpath
- Remachining a part to remove leftover stock

Creating the contour toolpath

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Contour.
- 2. Select a location on the left half of the flat edge as shown in the following picture.



The chaining arrow should point in the clockwise direction when you are done.

- 3. Choose Done.
- 4. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 5. Choose the 20 mm HSS flat endmill and choose OK.
- 6. Choose the Contour parameters tab.
- 7. Select the **Clearance** check box.

- 8. Choose Use clearance only at the start and end of operation.
- 9. Enter a **Depth** of -25. Make sure the **Absolute** option is selected.
- 10. Choose the Multi passes check box and button.
- 11. Enter **3** for **Number** of **Roughing passes** and **2** for **Spacing**. Your other values should match the following picture.

Mu	lti Passes	? ×
	- Roughing passes	
	Number	3
	Spacing	2.0
	- Finishing passes	
	Number	0
	Spacing	0.5
	Machine finish passes at	
	C Final depth	 All depths
	📕 Keep tool down	
Sec. 1	<u>DK</u> ance	l <u>H</u> elp

- 12. Choose OK.
- 13. Choose the **Depth cuts** check box and button.
- 14. Enter **10** for the **Max rough step**. Your other values should match the following picture.

Depth cuts			? ×
Max rough step: # Finish cuts: Finish step:	10.0 0 1.0	Depth cut order	C By depth
Keep tool dow	n	Tapered walls	\$
Subprogram		Taper angle:	0.0
C Absolute	Incremental		
		K <u>C</u> ancel	Help

- 15. Choose OK.
- 16. Choose the Lead in/out check box and button.
- 17. Choose Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours.
- 18. Enter an **Overlap** value of **5**.
- 19. Enter 0 for Entry–Line–Length.
- 20. Choose the \rightarrow button to copy the entry arc dimensions to the Exit section. Your values should match the following picture.

Lead In/Out	?
 Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours Gouge check entry/exit motion 	Overlap: 5.0
Entry Entry C Perpendicular Image Tangent Length: 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0	Exit Line Perpendicular © Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0
Radius: 100.0 % 20.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0	Radius: 100.0 % 20.0 Sweep: 90.0 90.0 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 0.0 0.0
Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only	Use point depth Exit on last depth cut only <u>QK</u> <u>QK</u>

- 21. Choose OK.
- 22. Verify that your other contour parameters match the following picture, and choose **OK**.

Tool parameters Contour parameters	
	✓ Clearance 100.0 Compensation type: Computer ✓ Absolute Incremental time time time time time time time time
Contour type: 2D Chamfer <u>R</u> amp Reg	Multi passes Image: Lead in/out Machining Image: Depth cuts Image: Filter
	<u> </u>

Mastercam generates the toolpath. It should look like the following picture.



Backplotting the toolpath

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. Toggle Verify to Y.

4. Press [S] repeatedly to step through the toolpath. You can see the multiple passes approach the part boundary. When you are done, your toolpath should look like the following picture.



Tip: To step through the toolpath quickly, hold down both mouse buttons while pressing [S]. At any time, press [R] to finish the backplot in one step.

Cleaning out the corners with remachining

After backplotting the contour toolpath, you can see that the 20 mm endmill is too large to clean out the corners.



You will use a remachining toolpath with a smaller tool to remove the leftover stock. Remachining toolpaths automatically calculate the stock left over from an earlier operation and clean it out.

- 1. When the backplot is complete, choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Right-click in the operations list window and choose **Toolpaths**, **Contour** from the menu.

154 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 3. Press [Alt + T] to clear the earlier toolpath from the screen.
- 4. Select a location on the left half of the top edge, just like you did for the previous toolpath.



The chaining arrow should point in the clockwise direction when you are done.

- 5. Choose Done.
- 6. Select a 5 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 7. Choose the Contour parameters tab.
- 8. Choose **Remachining** from the **Contour type** drop list.
- 9. Enter a **Depth** of **-25** and make sure the **Absolute** option is selected.
- 10. Clear the **Multi passes** check box. Since there is only a little stock to remove, you only need a single pass.
- 11. Choose the Lead in/out button.
- 12. Clear the Enter/exit at midpoint of closed contour check box.
- 13. Enter an **Overlap** value of **0**. Your other values should match the following picture.

Lead In/Out			×
Gouge check entry/exit motion	Overl	lap: 0.0	
C Perpendicular © Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0	N	Exit C Perpendicular © Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0	
Ramp height: 0.0	$\overline{\mathbf{N}}$	Ramp height: 0.0	
Radius: 100.0 % 5.0 Sweep: 90.0 Heliv height: 0.0		Radius: 100.0 % 5.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height 0.0	
Use entry point		Use exit point Use point depth Exit on last depth cut only	
		<u> </u>	

- 14. Choose OK.
- 15. Make sure your other contour parameters match the following picture and choose **OK**.

Tool parameters Contour parameters		
	 Clearance 100.0 Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 50.0 Absolute C Incremental Eeed plane 10.0 Absolute C Incremental Rapid retract Top of stock 0.0 Absolute C Incremental Depth25.0 Absolute C Incremental 	Compensation type:ComputerCompensation direction:LeftImage: ComputerImage: Compensation direction:Image: ComputerImage: ComputerTip compTipImage: ComputerTip compTipImage: ComputerRoll cutter around cornersSharpImage: ComputerRoll cutter around cornersSharpImage: ComputerInfinite look aheadImage: ComputerImage: ComputerLinearization toleranceImage: ComputerImage: ComputerXY stock to leaveImage: ComputerImage: ComputerZ stock to leaveImage: ComputerImage: ComputerImage: Computer to leaveImage: ComputerImage: ComputerXY stock to leaveImage: ComputerImage: ComputerZ stock to leaveImage: ComputerImage: ComputerImage: Computer to leave
Contour type: Remachining Chamfer Hamo Remac		epth cuts
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Mastercam generates the following toolpath. You can see that it has created toolpaths for just the small areas of stock left over from the previous operation.



16. Choose Select All, Backplot, Run.

The backplotted toolpaths should look like the following picture. You can see the corners are completely cleaned out.



- 17. Return to the Operations Manager and close it.
- 18. Press [Alt + A] and choose **OK** to save the file.

Exercise 3 – Machining the holes and slot

In this exercise, you will use some of Mastercam's circle milling toolpaths to machine the two large holes and the slot. You will learn the following techniques:

- circle milling
- helical boring
- slot milling

Creating a circle milling toolpath

You will machine the largest hole with a circle milling toolpath.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Next menu, Circ tlpths, Circle mill.
- 2. Select the large arc on the left.



- 3. Choose Done twice.
- 158 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 4. Choose a 32 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 5. Choose the Circmill parameters tab.
- 6. Enter –25 for the Depth.
- 7. Enter **3** for the **Overlap**.
- 8. Choose the **Depth cuts** check box and button.
- 9. Enter 5 for the Max. rough step.
- 10. Select **Keep tool down**. Your values should match the following picture.

Depth cuts		? ×
Max. rough step	5	.0
# Finish cuts	Γ	
Finish step	1	.0
🔽 Keep tool dowr).	
🗖 Subprogram		
C Absolute	Increase	mental
<u></u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

- 11. Choose OK.
- 12. Choose the Roughing check box and button.
- 13. Clear the **Helical entry** check box. Your roughing parameters should match the following picture.

cle mill roughing	50.0	_	10.0
itepover:	100.0	%	16.0
Helical entry			
Minimum radius:	50.0	%	16.0
Maximum radius:	50.0	%	16.0
XY clearance:			5.0
Z clearance:			1.0
Plunge angle:			3.0
☑ Output arc moves			
Tolerance:			0.001
If helix fails Plunce	0	Skip	

- 14. Choose OK.
- 15. Make sure your other circle milling parameters match the following picture and choose **OK**.

Tool parameters Circmill parameters		
	✓ Clearance 100.0 ◆ Absolute Incremental ✓ Use clearance only at the start and end of operation ✓ Retract 50.0 ● Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 10.0 ● Absolute Incremental ✓ Rapid retract 0.0 ● Absolute Incremental ● Pepth -25 ● Absolute Incremental	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Tip comp: Tip Tip comp: Tip Circle diameter: 25.0 Start angle: 90.0 Entry/exit arc sweep: 180.0 Start at center Perpendicular entry Overlap: 3 XY stock to leave: 0.0 Z stock to leave: 0.0 Roughing Multi pesses
		<u> </u>



- 16. Choose the green Gview-Isometric button on the toolbar. If necessary, choose the Screen–Fit button to fit the part on the screen.
- 17. Press [Alt + O] to display the Operations Manager.
- 18. Choose the **Circle Mill** operation so the blue check mark appears.



- 19. Choose Backplot.
- 20. Toggle Verify to N.
- 21. Press [S] to step through the toolpath. You should see the circle milled as shown in the following picture.



22. Close the Operations Manager when the backplot is done.



Creating a helical boring operation

Mastercam's helix boring function takes advantage of the special features of Felix® tools. You will use it to bore the other large hole. In this exercise, you will use a 32 mm flat endmill to approximate the Felix[®] tool.

1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Next menu, Circ tlpths, Helix bore.

2. Select the large arc on the right.



- 3. Choose **Done** twice.
- 4. Choose the 32 mm flat endmill.
- 5. Choose the Helix bore parameters tab.
- 6. Enter –25 for the Depth.
- 7. Choose Start at center.
- 8. Enter **3** for the **Overlap**. Your values should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Helix bore parameters	Rough / finish parameters	
	 Clearance 100.0 Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 50.0 Absolute C Incremental Eeed plane 10.0 Absolute C Incremental Rapid retract Iop of stock 0.0 Absolute C Incremental Depth 25.0 Absolute C Incremental 	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Tip comp: Center Circle diameter: 25.0 Start angle: 90.0 Entry/exit arc sweep: 180.0 Image: 3.0 Verlap: 3.0 XY stock to leave: 0.0 Z stock to leave: 0.0
	Numeral Action of Contract of	<u> </u>

- 9. Choose the Rough/finish parameters tab.
- 10. Enter 2 for Rough Pitch.
- 11. Enter 2 for Number of Rough passes and 5 for the Rough pass stepover amount.
- 12. Select the **Finish** check box.
- 13. Enter 1 for the **Finish stepover**. Your values should match the following picture.

lix bore parameters	? ×
Tool parameters Helix bore parameters	Rough / finish parameters
Rough pitch: Number of rough passes: Rough pass stepover: Feedrate at final depth: 30.0	2.0 2 5.0 % 9.6
✓ Finish Finish pitch:	2.0
Finish stepover: Feedrate: 125.0	1.0 % 40.0
Spindle speed (RPM): 200.0	% 500
Output arc moves for helixes	
Tolerance:	0.025
	<u> </u>

14. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the toolpath. It should look like the following picture.



Creating a slot milling operation

Mastercam also includes a slot milling toolpath that is a variation of the circle milling toolpath. Use it to machine the slot in the middle of the part.

- 1. Choose Circ tlpths, Slot mill.
- 2. Select the slot as shown in the following picture.



- 3. Choose Done.
- 4. Choose the 32 mm flat endmill.
- 5. Choose the **Slot parameters** tab.
- 6. Enter –25 for the Depth.
- 7. Enter **3** for the **Overlap**. Your values should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Slot parameters Rough) / finish parameters	
	✓ Clearance 100.0 ○ Absolute C ✓ Use clearance only at the start and end of operation ✓ Retract 50.0 ○ Absolute C ○ Absolute C ○ Absolute C ○ Absolute ○ ○ Depth.cuts ○	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Tip comp: Center Entry/exit arc sweep: 180.0 Perpendicular entry Overlap: 3.0 XY stock to leave: 0.0 Z stock to leave: 0.0
<u> </u>		<u> </u>

- 8. Choose the **Rough/Finish parameters** tab.
- 9. Enter a Plunge angle of 3.
- 10. Enter 1 for Finishing passes–Number and 1 for Spacing. Make sure your other parameters match the following picture.

i♥ nampenuy						
Stepover:	50.0	% 1	5.0			
Plunge angle:		3				
Output helixes as	arcs					
Tolerance:		0.	001			
Roughing passes						
Number:		1				
Spacing:		2	0			
Finishing passes						
Number:		1				
Spacing:		1.	0			
- K - 1 - 1						

11. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the toolpath shown in the following picture. You can see that the 3-degree plunge angle causes the tool to plunge into the part gradually and continuously during the roughing pass.



12. Press [Alt + A] to save the part.

Exercise 4 – Using Auto drill to create multiple drilling operations

Frequently you need to combine several different drilling operations on the same set of holes; for example, spot drilling, pre-drilling, drilling, and tapping. In previous chapters, you created multiple operations on the same geometry by copying one operation and editing its parameters. For drilling, Mastercam includes an even more powerful feature called Auto drilling. It lets you create a complete series of drilling operations from within a single dialog box.

In this exercise, you will use Auto drilling twice to drill two sets of holes. First, you will drill the 12 mm through holes on the part corners and tabs. Then, you will drill and tap the two rows of 10 mm holes. The holes are identified in the following picture.



You will learn the following skill:

• Using Auto drill to create spot drilling, pre-drilling, drilling, tapping, and chamfering operations

168 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial
Selecting the holes for the first operations

Your first drilling operations will be on the 12 mm holes.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Next menu, Circ tlpths, Auto drill.
- 2. Choose **Mask on arc**. This lets you select an arc and have Mastercam automatically choose arcs which match it.
- 3. Select the 12 mm arc shown in the following picture.



- 4. Press [Enter] to confirm the default tolerance value of **0.001**. Mastercam uses this tolerance value to decide which arcs are the same size as the one you selected.
- 5. Choose Window.
- 6. Toggle Use mask = Y.
- 7. Click and drag a window around the whole part to select all the holes on the part and click again.
- 8. Choose **Done**. Mastercam highlights the six 12 mm arcs and shows you a default drill path.
- 9. Choose **Options** so you can select a more efficient drilling pattern.
- 10. Choose the drilling pattern shown in the following picture.

2D sort Rotary sort Cross sort Sort Method	Point Sorting	? ×
Sort Method	2D sort Rotary sort Cross sort	
<pre></pre>	- Sort Method	
★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★ ★	• • • • • • • • • • •	
<pre></pre>		
<pre></pre>		
Filter out duplicates	📥 = Start point	
Filter out duplicates	Draw path	
	Filter out duplicates	
	<u> </u>	

11. Choose **OK**. Mastercam should sort the holes as shown in the following picture.



12. Choose Done. The Automatic Arc Drilling dialog box displays.

Setting the Auto drill parameters

For these holes, you want to include a spot drill operation, then predrill in 3 mm increments. No chamfering or threading is required for these holes.

- 1. Select a Finish tool type of Drill.
- 2. Select Generate spot drilling operation.
- 3. In the **Spot drilling operation** section, enter a **Maximum tool depth** of -2.
- 4. Enter 5 for the **Default spot drill diameter**.
- 5. Select the **Home pos** check box and button.
- 6. Enter a Z coordinate of **200** for the home position as shown in the following picture.

Home Position	? ×
× 0.0	Select
Y 0.0	
Z 200.0	
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

- 7. Choose OK.
- 8. Verify that your tool parameters match the following picture.

Automotic And Dailling	2 4
Tool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Cu	ustom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling
Parameters Finish tool type Drill Create arcs on selected points 0.0 Suppress 'Accept closest matching tool' prompts	Chamfering with the spot drill C None Add depth to spot drilling operation Make separate operation Chamfer size 0.8
Spot drilling operation Generate spot drilling operation Maximum tool depth Default cast drill dispate	Comment
Default spot drill diameter [5.0 Select default spot drill	Image: Home pos Image: Bef point Image: Misc. yalues Image: Rotary agis Image: T/C plane Change NCI
	<u>Q</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 9. Choose the Depths, Group, and Library tab.
- 10. In the **Drill group and type** field, enter the following name for the drilling operations: **12 mm thru holes**
- 11. Clear the Use arc views check box.
- 12. Enter a **Depth** of **–25**.
- 13. Clear the **Override depth using lowest coincident selected arc** check box.
- 14. Choose the **Tip comp** check box and button.
- 15. Enter a Breakthrough amount of 2.
- 16. Choose **OK**. Make sure your parameters match the following picture.

Automatic Arc Drilling		? ×		
Tool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Custom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling				
Tip comp	 Clearance Clearance Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 Absolute C Incremental Iop of stock 0.0 Absolute C Incremental Depth 25.0 Absolute C Incremental Override depth using lowest coincident selected arcs 	Drill group and type 12 mm thru holes ③ 3 axis □ Use arc views ④ No sorting or grouping ① Sort by view ① Group by view ③ 5 axis Tool library METRICST52.TL9 Diameter match tol 0.01		
<u> </u>				

- 17. Choose the **Pre-drilling** tab.
- 18. Choose Generate pre-drill operations.
- 19. Enter 6 for the Minimum pre-drill diameter.
- 20. Enter **3** for the **Pre-drill diameter increment**. Your parameters should match the following picture.

Tool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Custom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling Pre-Drill operations Image: Construction of the second of the se	omatic Arc Drilling			? ×
	omatic Arc Drilling ool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Pre-Drill operations Image: Comparison of the second	Custom Drill Parameters	Pre-drilling	

- 21. Choose **OK** to generate the drill operations.
- 22. Press [Alt + O] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 23. Click and drag the lower corner of the window to make it bigger, if necessary. You can see the list of new operations that were created. Mastercam automatically creates a new toolpath group to contain them all.



24. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.

Selecting the holes for the second set of operations

Your second set of drilling operations will be on the 10 mm holes.

1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Next menu, Circ tlpths, Auto drill, Mask on arc.

Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 175

2. Select the 10 mm arc shown in the following picture.



- 3. Press [Enter] to confirm the default tolerance value.
- 4. Choose Window.
- 5. Click and drag a window around the whole part and click again.
- 6. Choose Done.
- 7. Choose Options.
- 8. Choose the drilling pattern shown in the following picture.

Point Sorting
2D sort Rotary sort Cross sort
Sort Method Image: Sort Met
 ➡ = Start point □ Draw path □ Filter out duplicates
<u> </u>

9. Choose OK.

10. Choose Done. The Automatic Arc Drilling dialog box displays.

Setting the parameters for the second Auto drill operations

For these holes, you want to include the following drilling cycles:

- ♦ spot drill
- pre-drill in 2 mm increments
- thread with a right-hand tap
- ◆ chamfer

The different parameters are pre-set with the values from your previous Auto drilling session, so you only need to enter the changes.

- 1. From the Finish tool type drop list, choose Tap RH Fine.
- 2. Enter a Default spot drill diameter of 20.
- 3. In the **Chamfering with the spot drill** section, choose **Make separate operation**.
- 4. Enter a Chamfer size of 2.
- 5. Select the **Home pos** check box and button.

6. Enter a Z coordinate of **200** for the home position as shown in the following picture.

Home Position	? ×
× 0.0	Select
Y 0.0	
Z 200.0	
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel

7. Choose OK. Your settings should match the following picture.

Automatic Arc Drilling	? ×
Tool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Cu	istom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling
Parameters Finish tool type Tap RH Fine Create arcs on selected points 0.0 Suppress 'Accept closest matching tool' prompts	Chamfering with the spot drill C None Add depth to spot drilling operation Make separate operation Chamfer size 2.0
Spot drilling operation	Comment Job setup
Image: Generate spot drilling operation Maximum tool depth -2.0 Default spot drill diameter 20.0 Select default spot drill	✓ Home pos ✓ Home pos ✓ Bef point ✓ Misc. yalues ✓ T/C plane Change NCI
	<u> </u>

- 8. Choose the Depths, Group, and Library tab.
- 9. In the **Drill group and type** field, enter the following name for the drilling operations: **10 mm drilled and tapped**

Make sure your parameters match the following picture.

178 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Automatic Arc Dr	illing		? ×
Tool Parameters	Depths, Group and I	_ibrary Custom Drill Parameters Pre	-drilling
		Clearance 100.0 • Absolute • Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 • Absolute • Incremental <u>Iop of stock</u> 0.0 • Absolute • Incremental <u>Depth</u> •25.0 • Absolute • Incremental <u>Override depth using lowest coincident selected arcs</u>	Drill group and type 10 mm drilled and tapped 3 axis Use arc views No sorting or grouping Sort by view Group by view 5 axis Tool library METRICST52.TL9 Diameter match tol 0.01
		<u></u> K	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 10. Choose the **Pre-drilling** tab.
- 11. Enter **2** for the **Pre-drill diameter increment**. Verify that your parameters match the following picture.

Automatic Arc Drilling	×
Tool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Custom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling	
Pre-Drill operations	
Generate pre-drill operations	
Minimum pre-drill diameter 6.0	
Pre-drill diameter increment 2.0	
Stock per side remaining for finish tool	
V Ip comp	
DK Cancel Help	

12. Choose **OK** to generate the drill operations.

- 13. Press [Alt + O] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 14. Review the list of new operations that were created.



- 15. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 16. Press [Alt + A] to save the part.

You've now seen a variety of applications for Mastercam's circle toolpaths. The next chapter will introduce you to more general purpose pocketing toolpaths and related functions.

9 Facing and Pocketing Toolpaths

This chapter shows you how to create a toolpath for facing your stock and introduces some basic concepts for creating pocket toolpaths:

- Comparing different pocket cutting methods
- Using an entry point to start a pocket toolpath
- Using a contour ramp toolpath

Exercise 1 – Facing the stock with high-speed loops

A facing toolpath quickly cleans the stock from the top of a part and creates an even surface for future operations. When facing the stock, it is important to have the tool overlap the edges of the part by at least 50% of its diameter to prevent leaving little scallops of material at the edges of the stock. In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Using Job Setup to define a stock boundary
- Creating a facing toolpath

Entering stock boundaries

Assume that your stock is a 90 mm x 120 mm block. You want to face it so that the final thickness will be 12 mm.

1. Open the file **facing-mm.mc9** from the folder

C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric. It should look like the following picture.



- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Job Setup.
- 3. Enter 90 for the Y dimension of the stock model.
- 4. Enter **120** for the **X** dimension.
- 5. Enter **15** for the **Z** dimension. Since the goal is to finish with a 12 mm block, you will use 15 mm as a starting dimension and face off 3 mm of stock.
- 6. Enter **3** for **Stock Origin–Z**. By setting the top of the rough stock at Z = 3, you ensure that when the facing toolpath is finished, the top of the qualified stock will be Z = 0.
- 7. Select **Display stock**. Your other values should match the following picture.

🛐 Job Setup	? ×
Import Y	X Safety zone
	Z
Stock Origin X Q.0 Y 0.0 222	Display stock Fit screen to stock
Z 3.0 Select origin Select corners	Bounding box <u>N</u> CI extents
Toolpath Configuration	Tool Offset Registers
Output operation comments to NCI Generate toolpath immediately	Add O O
Save toolpath in MC9 file	C From tool
✓ Assign tool numbers sequentially	Feed Calculation
Warn of duplicate tool numbers Use tool's step, peck, coolant	Material From tool Maximum RPM 5000
Head number equals tool number	Adjust feed on arc move
Material ALUMINUM mm - 2024	Minimum arc feed 0.254
Post Processor	<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

8. Choose **OK**. You will see a dotted red line around your part, representing the stock boundary.



Creating the facing toolpath

- 1. Choose Face, Done.
- 2. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 3. Select a 25 mm HSS flat endmill and choose OK.
- 4. Choose the Facing parameters tab.

For this exercise, you will use the default values shown in the following picture. Mastercam has already read the Top of stock value of 3 from Job Setup.

Tool parameters Facing parameters		
Image: second	Tip comp: Roll cutter around corners: Cutting method: Zigzag Stepover: 75.0 Auto angle Roughing angle: Move between cuts: High spectrum Feed rate between cuts: 4 Across overlap: 50.0 Along overlap: 50.0 Exit distance: 50.0	Tip ▼ Sharp ▼ ※ 18.75 0.0 ● ed loops ▼ 10.0 ● ※ 12.5 ※ 12.5 ※ 12.5 ※ 12.5
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> anc	el <u>H</u> elp

Note: The **Move between cuts** field is set to High speed loops to provide smooth movement between passes. This type of motion reduces wear on the tool.

5. Choose **OK**. The toolpath should look like the following picture.



6. Choose **Main Menu**, **File**, **Save** and save the part in your working folder as **facing toolpath.mc9**.

Exercise 2 – Comparing different pocket cutting methods

Mastercam offers you seven different pocketing methods. In this exercise, you will compare two of these: the *parallel spiral* and *constant overlap spiral* cutting methods. Each method has advantages:

- The parallel spiral cutting method creates a relatively short NC program but does not guarantee complete cleanout depending on the shape of the pocket and the stepover of each pass.
- The constant overlap spiral cutting method cleans out more stock than parallel spiral because it analyzes the stock after each pass.

The following picture shows the final pocket toolpath for the part used in this exercise.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- ♦ Creating pocket toolpaths
- Using the Parallel Spiral cutting method
- Using the Constant Overlap Spiral cutting method
- Using helical entry

Chaining the pocket toolpath and selecting the tool

- Open pocket-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Pocket.
- 3. Select the part at the location shown in the following picture.



186 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 4. Choose Done.
- 5. Right-click in the tool display area.
- 6. Choose Get tool from library.
- 7. Select the 10mm HSS flat endmill and choose OK.

Entering the toolpath parameters

- 1. Select the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 2. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Pocketing parameters Roughing/Finishing parameters
Tool parameters Pocketing parameters Roughing/Finishing parameters Image: Constraint of the state of the
C Absolute C Incremental C Create additional finish operation Depth -8.0 C Absolute C Incremental Pocket type: Standard Facing Remachining Open pockets Advanced
<u> </u>

- 3. Select the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 4. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

ool parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters
Rough	Cutting method: Parallel Spiral
Zigzag Constant Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners
Stepover percentage 80.0	Minimize tool burial Entry - helix
Stepover distance 8.0	Spiral inside to outside
Roughing angle	
✓ Finish	
No. of passes 1	Finish pass spacing 0.25
🔽 Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation computer
🛛 🗖 Start finish pass at closest entity	Optimize cutter comp in control
Keep tool down	Machine finish passes only at final depth
	Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets
	<u> </u>

5. Choose OK.

Backplotting and verifying the toolpath

- 1. Choose **Operations**. The Operations Manager displays.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. On the Backplot menu, set the **Verify** option to **Y** (Yes). This will let you see the stock that was cleaned out by the tool.
- 4. Choose **Run**. The entire backplot is completed at once. The toolpath should look like the following picture.



5. Choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.

Changing the cutting method

Follow these steps to select a different pocket cutting method that will do a better job of cleaning out the pocket.

1. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the toolpath.



- 2. Choose the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 3. Select the **Constant Overlap Spiral** cutting method.



- 4. Choose the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 5. Choose Advanced.
- 6. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Advanced	? ×
- Tolerance for remachining	g and constant overlap spiral —
Percent of tool diameter	5.0
Tolerance	0.5
Display stock for const	ant overlap spiral
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 7. Choose OK twice.
- 8. Choose Regen Path to regenerate the modified toolpath.
- 9. Choose Backplot.
- 10. Choose Run. The toolpath should look like the following picture.



You can see that the new toolpath has completely cleaned out the pocket.

Adding a helical entry

Finally, add a helical entry move so the tool enters the pocket more smoothly.

- 1. Choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the Parameters icon.

190 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 3. Choose the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 4. Select the Entry helix (or Entry ramp) check box and button.
- 5. Choose the **Helix** tab.
- 6. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Helix/Ramp Parameters	? ×
Helix Ramp	
Minimum radius: 10.0 \$ 1.0 Maximum radius: 100.0 \$ 10.0 Z clearance: 1.0 1.0 XY clearance: 1.0 Plunge angle: 3.0	Direction
Output arc moves Tolerance: Center on entry point	If all entry attempts fail Plunge C Skip Save skipped boundary Entry feed rate Plunge rate C Feed rate
	<u> </u>

Note: The Z clearance is the distance above the top of stock where the helix starts.

- 7. Choose OK twice.
- 8. Choose Regen Path.
- 9. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.



10. Choose the green **Gview–Isometric** button from the toolbar to switch into isometric view so you can see the new toolpath more clearly. It should look like the following picture.



11. Save the part in your working folder as spiral pocket.mc9.

Exercise 3 – Specifying an entry point

Specifying an entry point for a pocket toolpath can be necessary for tools that cannot plunge directly into the material. Instead of drilling a hole in the material at the desired entry point, which would require creating a separate drilling operation, you can add an extra point when chaining the pocket toolpath. Mastercam will automatically use this point as the entry point for the toolpath.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Using an entry point in a pocket toolpath
- Creating lead in/out moves for a finish pass

You will create a toolpath that looks like the following picture:



2

Chaining the pocket toolpath and selecting the tool

- 1. Open entry point-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Pocket.
- 3. Select the point at position 1.
- 4. Select the part boundary at position 2.
- 5. Choose Done.

Note: You could have selected

either the point or the boundary first. Mastercam automatically knows that the point should be used as the entry point for the pocket toolpath.

6. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 10 mm HSS flat endmill.

Entering the toolpath parameters

- 1. Select the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 2. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Pocketing parameters Roughing/Finishing parameters	
Image: Clearance 100.0 Image: Clearance 50.0 Image: Clearance 10.0 Image: Clearance 10.0 Image: Clearance 10.0 Image: Clearance 0.0 Image: Clearance	Machining direction Climb Conventional Tip comp Tip Roll cutter around corners None Linearization tolerance 0.0 Z stock to leave 0.0 Create additional finish operation
Pocket type: Standard Facing Remachining	D <u>epth.cuts</u> F <u>ilter</u> Advanced
	QK <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 3. Select the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 4. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

I parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters
🔽 Rough	Cutting method: Zigzag
Zigzag Constant F Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners
Stepover percentage 75.0	Minimize tool burial
Stepover distance 7.5	Spiral inside to outside <u>High Speed</u>
Roughing angle 0.0	
No. of passes 1	Finish pass spacing 0.25
🔽 Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation computer
🔲 Start finish pass at closest entity	Optimize cutter comp in control
🔽 Keep tool down	Machine finish passes only at final depth
	Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets
	<u> </u>

- 5. Choose the Lead in/out check box and button.
- 6. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

In/Out		?
	Overlap: 0.0	
Entry-	Exit	
C Perpendicular ⓒ Tangent	C Perpendicular © Tangent	
Length: 0.0 % 0.0	Length: 0.0 % 0.0	
Ramp height: 0.0	Ramp height:	
Radius: 130.0 % 13.0	Radius: 130.0 % 13.0	
Sweep: 90.0	Sweep: 90.0	
Helix height:	Helix height: 0.0	
Use entry point	Use exit point	
🗖 Use point depth	🗖 Use point depth	
Enter on first depth cut only	Exit on last depth cut only	

Note: Adding a lead in/out to the finish pass prevents a dwell mark on the part at the end of the toolpath.

- 7. Choose OK twice.
- 8. Switch to **Gview–Isometric**. The completed toolpath should look like the following picture.



- 9. Save the part in your working folder as entry point pocket.mc9.
- 196 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Exercise 4 – Using contour ramp

In this exercise, the contour toolpath includes a ramping motion to move between depth cuts. The ramp uses constant stepdown in the Z axis which can be effective for high-speed machining. The following picture shows the completed toolpath. This toolpath is appropriate if the pocket has already been roughed out in a previous operation.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skill:

- Using ramp contours
- Chaining the geometry and select the tool
- 1. Open contour ramp-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Contour.
- 3. Select the part at the location shown in the following picture. The chaining arrow should point clockwise when you are done.



- 4. Choose Done.
- 5. Select the10 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.

Entering the toolpath parameters

- 1. Select the Contour parameters tab.
- 2. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Contour parameters	
Contour type: Ramp	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Right Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Right Image: Computer direction: Tip comp Tip Image: Computer direction: Tip comp Tip Image: Computer direction: Roll cutter around corners Sharp Image: Computer direction: Image: Infinite look ahead Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Max. depth variance 0.025 Max. depth variance Image: Computer direction: XY stock to leave 0.0 Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Z stock to leave 0.0 Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Computer direction: Image: Direction: Image: Com
Chamfer Bamp Remachining De	e <u>pth</u> cuts F <u>iter</u>
	<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

3. Choose the **Ramp** button and enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Ramp contour	? ×
Ramp motion: C Angle © Depth C Plunge	
Ramp angle: 3.0	
Ramp depth: 5.0	
Cone way ramping for open contours	
I▼ Linearize helixes	
Linearization tolerance: 0.025	_
KCancel Help	2

- 4. Choose OK.
- 5. Choose the **Lead in/out** button and enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Lead In/Out		? ×
 Enter/exit at midpoint in closed contours Gouge check entry/exit motion 	Overlap: 0.0	I
Entry Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Barro height: 0.0	C Perpendicular Length: 0.0 Bamo beinht:	€ Tangent ≈ [0.0
Arc Radius: 100.0 % 10.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0	Arc Radius: 100 Sweep: Helix height:	0.0 % 10.0 90.0 0.0
 Use entry point Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only 	Use exit point Use point depth Exit on last depth	cut only Cancel Help

- 6. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath.
- 7. Choose **Operations** to open the Operations Manager.

- 8. Choose Backplot.
- 9. Switch to Gview–Isometric and set Verify=N. Step through the backplot to see the results of the contour ramp. The toolpath should look like the following picture. You can see that there are no direct steps between successive depths. The tool moves continuously in the negative Z direction.



10. Save the part in your working folder as **ramp pocket.mc9**.

You've already seen in this chapter how different pocketing methods can improve efficiency. The next chapter will show you even more techniques for efficient machining and optimal clean out, including remachining and high speed machining.

10 Pocket and Contour Toolpath Techniques

This chapter covers some additional concepts for creating pocket and contour toolpaths.

- Using pocket remachining for more efficient clean out.
- Combining pocket depth cuts, tapered walls, and island facing to remove material from a more complicated part with multiple islands.
- Using the Toolpath Editor to edit a toolpath.

Exercise 1 – Remachining pockets

Using remachining in pocket toolpaths can save time, because you can use a large tool on your roughing toolpath to quickly clean out as much material as possible. You can then create a remachining toolpath to go back into the part with a smaller tool and clean out the areas that the large tool was not able to reach. The following pictures show the rough and remachining toolpaths for this exercise.





In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Remachining pockets
- Using the helical entry and lead in/out features

Chaining the pocket geometry and selecting the tool

- 1. Open **remachine-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.**
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Pocket.
- 3. Select the part at the location shown in the following picture. The chaining arrow should point clockwise when you are done.



- 4. Choose Done.
- 202 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 5. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 6. Select the 25 mm HSS flat endmill and choose OK.

Entering the toolpath parameters

- 1. Select the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 2. Enter –8 for the **Depth**. Your other values should match the following picture.

Tool parameters	Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters
		Clearance 100.0 Machining direction Climb C Conventional Use clearance only at the Tip comp
Į		start and end of operation Roll cutter Retract 50.0 Roll cutter Absolute Incremental Linearization
		Eeed plane 10.0 tolerance C Absolute Incremental XY stock to leave 0.0 V Rapid retract Z stock to leave 0.0
		Iop of stock 0.0 C Absolute C Incremental Denth -8.0
		C Absolute C Incremental
Pocket type:	Standard	Depth cuts
Facing	Re <u>mac</u> hining	pen <u>p</u> ockets
		<u> </u>

- 3. Select the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 4. Make the selections shown on the following dialog box.

ol parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters
🔽 Rough	Cutting method: Zigzag
Zigzag Constant F Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners
•	
Stepover percentage 75.0	Minimize tool burial Image: Second
Stepover distance 18.75	Spiral inside to outside High Speed
Roughing angle 0.0	
🔽 Finish	
No. of passes 1	Finish pass spacing 0.25
Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation computer
🔲 🔲 Start finish pass at closest entity	Optimize cutter comp in control
🔽 Keep tool down	Machine finish passes only at final depth
	✓ Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets ✓ Lead in/out
	<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

5. Choose the Entry – ramp (or Entry – helix) button.
- 6. Choose the **Helix** tab.
- 7. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Helix/Ramp Parameters		? 🗙
Helix Ramp		
Minimum radius: 10.0 %	2.5	Direction
Maximum radius: 100.0 %	25.0	
Z clearance:	1.0	Follow boundary
XY clearance:	1.0	I On failure only if length exceeds: 10.0
Hunge angle:	3.0	If all entry attempts fail
✓ Output arc moves Tolerance:	0.05	Plunge C Skip Save skipped boundary
Center on entry point		Entry feed rate Plunge rate Feed rate
		<u> </u>

Tip: These options prevent the tool from plunging directly into the material by adding a helix to the start of the pocket toolpath.

- 8. Choose OK.
- 9. Choose the Lead in/out button.
- 10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

	Overlap: 5.0
Entry Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 % 12.5 Arc 8 12.5 90.0 Heix height: 0.0 % 10.0 Use entry point 0.0 0.0 0.0 Enter on first depth Enter on first depth cut only 0.0	Exit C Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 2 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 2 12.5 Sweep: 90.0 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 0.0 Use exit point Use exit point Exit on last depth cut only

11. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath.



12. Choose the green **Gview–Isometric** button from the toolbar so you can see the new toolpath more clearly. It should look like the following picture.



206 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Backplotting the toolpath

- 1. Choose Operations.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. Toggle the Verify option to Y.
- 4. Choose the green **Gview–Top** button to return to the Top view.
- 5. Press [S] repeatedly to step through the toolpath.
- 6. Choose **OK** when the backplot is complete. It should look like the following picture.



The arrows show you where the tool could not reach into the corners of the pocket. The next procedure shows you how to create a remachining toolpath to clean out the remaining stock.

- 7. Choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.
- 8. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.
- 9. Save the file in your working folder as remachined pocket.mc9.

Creating the remachining toolpath

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Pocket.
- 2. Press [Alt + T] to clear the toolpath from the screen.
- 3. Select the pocket boundary as shown in the following picture.





- 4. Choose Done.
- 5. Select the 10 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 6. Select the Pocketing parameters tab.
- 7. Enter a **Depth** of **-8**.
- 8. Choose **Remachining** from the **Pocket type** drop-down list. The other values should match the following picture.

Tool parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters	
Pocket type: Remachining	Clearance 100.0 ● Absolute Incremental □ Use clearance only at the start and end of operation ▼ Retract 50.0 ● Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 10.0 ● Absolute Incremental ■ Gend plane 10.0 ● Absolute ● Incremental ■ Gend plane 0.0 ● Absolute ● Incremental ■ Depth -8.0 ● Absolute ● Incremental	Machining direction Climb Conventional Tip comp Tip Roll cutter around corners None Linearization tolerance 0.001 XY stock to leave 0.0 Z stock to leave 0.0 Create additional finish operation
Facing Remachining	pen <u>p</u> ockets	Ad <u>v</u> anced
		<u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp

- 9. Choose the **Remachining** button.
- 10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Pocket remachining	? ×		
Compute remaining stock from:			
C All previous operations			
The previous operation			
C Roughing tool diameter			
Roughing tool diameter 25.0			
Clearance 10.0 % 1.0			
Apply entry/exit curves to rough passes	:		
Machine complete finish passes			
🔽 Display stock			
<u> </u>	p		

- 11. Choose OK.
- 12. Select the **Roughing/Finishing** parameters tab.
- 13. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

ool parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters	
🔽 Rough	Cutting method: Parallel Spiral	
Zigzag Constant Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners	
Stepover percentage 50.0	Minimize tool burial	
Stepover distance 5.0	Spiral inside to outside	
Roughing angle		
🔽 Finish		
No. of passes 1	Finish pass spacing 0.25	
🔽 Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation computer	
🗖 Start finish pass at closest entity	Optimize cutter comp in control	
🔽 Keep tool down	Machine finish passes only at final depth	
Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets		
	<u> </u>	

- 14. Choose the Lead in/out button.
- 15. Change the **Entry** and **Exit Arc–Radius** to **75%**. Your values should match the following dialog box.

Overlap: 5.0 Entry Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 75.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Verlap: Exit Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 Xor Radius: 75.0 Xor Helix height: 0.0 Use exit point Use exit point	Lead In/Out		? ×
Entry Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 75.0 \$ 7.5 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use exit point Image: Constraint desting Exit Line Perpendicular Tangent Length: 0.0 Arc Radius: 75.0 \$ 7.5 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use exit point Image:		Overlap: 5.0	
Cancel Help	Entry Line C Perpendicular ● Tangent Length: 0.0 ≈ 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 75.0 ≈ 7.5 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use entry point Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only	Exit Line Perpendicular Ramp height: 0.0 Xrc Radius: 75.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: Use exit point Use point depth Exit on last depth cut only	

- 16. Choose OK twice.
- 17. Mastercam will show you previews of the remachining operation. First, it shows you the areas where the rough tool could reach, with the message, "Machinable area for rough tool" in the prompt area. Press [Enter] to continue.



18. Next, it shows you the areas that the finish tool you selected should be able to reach. Press [Enter] to continue.



19. Next, it shows the stock that remains for the finish tool to remove, as shown in the following picture. Press [Enter] to continue.



20. Finally, Mastercam tells you how much material will remain after the remachining operation. In this case, you should see the message, "Remaining stock after remachining. Area = 0.0000." Press [Enter] to continue.

The remachining toolpath should look like the following picture.



21. Press [Alt + A] to save the file in your working folder.

Exercise 2 – Using depth cuts, island facing, and tapered walls

Depth cuts, island facing, and tapered walls are often used together on more complex pocket toolpaths. For example, tapered walls require multiple depth cuts so that the offset for the walls can be computed at each depth. Also, when you face the islands, Mastercam can automatically use the island depth as one of the depth cut values. The completed toolpath should look like the following picture.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 213

In this exercise, you will use an inch part. You will see how Mastercam automatically adjusts when you open the part and prompts you with the proper tool library and default values. In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Using an inch part
- Using depth cuts
- Using island facing
- Machining tapered walls

Chaining the pocket geometry

- 1. Open islands.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Inch.
- 2. Choose **OK** when you see the following message.

System	Configuration 🛛 🕅
	System units switched from Metric to English. English configuration file loaded c:\mcam9\mill9.cfg
	[OK]

Note: The configuration file determines which units Mastercam is using. The default files are **mill9.cfg** for working in inches and **mill9m.cfg** for metric operations. Mastercam knows which units were used to create a part file and prompts you with the previous message if it needs to switch.

Tip: To change the current part drawing from inch to metric, choose **Main Menu**, **Screen**, **Config**. The configuration file is listed in the lower left corner:



- 3. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Pocket, Area.
- 4. Click near location 1 to select all the boundaries.



The Area selection method lets you select an area that is surrounded by a completely closed boundary by clicking inside it. Mastercam automatically knows about the islands inside the pocket when you use this method.

- 5. Choose Done.
- 6. Select a 5/8" flat endmill from the tool library and choose **OK**. Mastercam automatically shows you the library of inch tools.

Entering the pocketing parameters

- 1. Select the Pocketing parameters tab.
- 2. Enter 0.25 for the Retract height.
- 3. Enter **0.1** for Feed plane.
- 4. Enter a **Depth** of **-1.75**.
- 5. Choose Island facing from the Pocket type drop list.
- 6. Choose the **Facing** button. When you choose an **Island facing** pocket type, the settings in this dialog box determine the cutting action Mastercam uses to trim the tops of the islands. Your values should match the following picture.

Facing	? ×
Overlap percentage:	50.0
Overlap amount:	0.3125
Approach distance:	0.5
Exit distance:	0.5
Stock above islands:	0.0
<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

- 7. Choose OK.
- 8. Choose the **Depth cuts** check box and button.
- 9. Select Use island depths.
- 10. Select **Tapered walls**. Make sure your other values match the following dialog box.



11. Choose **OK**. Your other pocketing parameters should match the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Pocketing para	neters Roughing/Finishing parameters	
	Clearance 2.0 Absolute Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 0.25 Absolute Incremental Feed plane 0.1 Absolute Incremental Rapid retract Top of stock 0.0 Absolute Incremental Depth 1.75 Absolute Incremental Depth 1.75 Absolute Incremental	Machining direction Climb Conventional Tip comp Tip Roll cutter around corners Sharp Linearization 0.001 XY stock to leave 0.0 Z stock to leave 0.0 Create additional finish operation
Pocket type: Island facin Facing	g Open gookets	gpth cuts Filter
		<u>OK C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 12. Select the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 13. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

ool parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters	
🔽 Rough	Cutting method: Zigzag	
Zigzag Constant Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners	
Stepover percentage 60.0	Minimize tool burial Entry - ramp	
Stepover distance 0.375	Spiral inside to outside	
Roughing angle 0.0		
✓ Finish		
No. of passes 1	Finish pass spacing 0.01	
🔽 Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation computer	
🔲 Start finish pass at closest entity	Optimize cutter comp in control	
Keep tool down Machine finish passes only at final depth		
	✓ Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets ✓ Lead in/out	
	<u> </u>	

- 14. Choose the Lead in/out check box and button.
- 15. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Lead In/Out			? ×
	Overl	lap: 0.0	
Entry Line Perpendicular ● Tangent Length: 0.0 ≈ 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 80.0 ≈ 0.5 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only	4	Exit Line C Perpendicular C Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 80.0 % 0.5 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use exit point Use point depth Exit on last depth cut only	
		<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

- 16. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath.
- 17. Switch to isometric view to see the toolpath more clearly. It should look like the following picture.



Verifying the toolpath

To get a better picture of the toolpath results, you will use the Verify function. Because it previews the actual stock removal, it will give you a clearer picture of how the islands were machined.

- 1. Choose **Operations**.
- 2. Choose Verify.



3. Choose the **Machine** button on the Verify toolbar. You should see the part machined as shown in the following picture.



Note: The stock boundary that you see in the Verify picture was already defined for you in the file.

- 4. Choose the **Close** button 💌 on the Verify toolbar to return to the Operations Manager.
- 5. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.
- 6. Save the file in your working folder as **island pocket.mc9**.

220 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Exercise 3 – Modifying a toolpath using the Toolpath Editor

This exercise shows you how to make corrections to a toolpath using Mastercam's Toolpath Editor. The Toolpath Editor gives you a fine level of control over the motion in your toolpath. You can make modifications to the tool motion created by Mastercam and change the areas of the part that are machined.

In this exercise, the part drawing shows the clamps that you will use to hold the part while it is being machined. You will backplot the toolpath to see if the clamps interfere with it, and then modify it so that the tool doesn't make contact with the clamps.

It is important to note that when you change a toolpath with the Toolpath Editor, the changes are not associative. This means that if you make other changes to the operation—for example, changing any of the tool or contour parameters, or changing any geometry—you will not be able to update the toolpath by choosing the Regen Path button like you have done in other exercises. The NCI file for the operation is locked so you don't overwrite the changes you have made with the Toolpath Editor. The following picture shows the part, clamps, and original toolpath.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 221

Note: To make other changes to the toolpath after using the Toolpath Editor, unlock the NCI file and regenerate the toolpath. Make your changes, and then re-edit with the Toolpath Editor. See the online help for more information about unlocking NCI files.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skill:

Using the Toolpath Editor to modify selected points on a toolpath

Inspecting the toolpath

1. Open **tp_editor-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.**

Note: If you have just completed the previous exercise, the units will switch to millimeters.

- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Operations, Backplot.
- 3. Press [S] repeatedly to step through the toolpath. You can see that the tool passes right through the clamps.
- 4. Choose **OK** when the backplot is complete.
- 5. Choose Backup.

The next two procedures show you how to use the Toolpath Editor to fix the toolpath.

Adding points with the Toolpath Editor

Your first change will be to add some points to the toolpath so it can move around the first clamp.

1. In the Operations Manager, right-click on the **NCI** icon for the operation:



The Toolpath Editor opens.

Note: You can move the dialog box to the top of the graphics window to view the toolpath while you make edits.

2. Use the up arrow scroll key (circled in the following picture) to move to point 8.



Point 1 in the following picture should be highlighted.



- 3. Choose the **Options** button.
- 4. Under Point Insertion Mode, choose After and choose OK.
- 5. Choose the **Edit** button.
- 6. Choose Add Point, Relative, Last, Rectang.
- 7. Type **z50** in the prompt area and press [Enter]. The point should be added as shown:



8. Click the up arrow scroll button twice. You should see **Point 10** in the Toolpath Editor dialog box as shown in the following picture, and Point 2 highlighted on the geometry.

Toolpath Editor	? ×
Position	<u>0</u> K
Cut Pass Point U Select	<u>C</u> ancel
Edit Options Undo	<u>H</u> elp

- 9. Choose the **Options** button. Under **Point Insertion Mode**, choose **Before** and choose **OK**.
- 10. Choose the **Edit** button.
- 11. Choose Add Point, Relative, Last, Rectang.
- 12. Type **z50** in the prompt area and press [Enter]. The second point should be added as shown in the following picture. You can see that the new toolpath will clear the clamp.



- 13. Now edit the new moves so that they are rapid moves instead of feed moves. Choose Edit, Edit Point.
- 14. When the Edit Point Parameters dialog box opens, choose **Rapid Move** and choose **OK**.

Edit Point Paran	neters		? ×
Feed Rate	5000.0	Cutter Comp	None 💌
Change: 🕥 M	odal ${f O}$ Section	Coolant	Flood 💌
Rapid Move	Rapid Height	60.44	Canned <u>Text</u>
🗖 Stop	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

- 15. Use the down arrow scroll button in the Toolpath Editor to move to point 9. (This is the first point that you added.)
- 16. Choose Edit, Edit Point.
- 17. Choose Rapid Move again and choose OK.

Deleting points with the Toolpath Editor

To clear the second clamp, you will delete the section of the toolpath that crashes into it.

1. Choose the **Select** button and select point 3 on the geometry as shown in the following picture.



- 2. Choose the Edit button and choose Del Section, Forward Step, Done.
- 3. Choose **OK** at the confirmation message. The toolpath should look like the following picture.



- 4. Choose the **Select** button and select point 4 on the geometry as shown in the previous picture.
- 5. Choose Edit, Edit Point.
- 6. Select Rapid Move.
- 7. Enter **50** for the **Rapid Height**.

226 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



8. Choose **OK**. The toolpath should look like the following picture.



9. Choose **OK** to close the Toolpath Editor. The Operations Manager opens.



The Operations Manager shows a red lock over the NCI icon. Because you used the Toolpath Editor, the toolpath is automatically locked.

10. Choose **Backplot** to verify the new toolpath and make sure it clears the clamps.

- 11. To more clearly verify the first clamp, choose the **Gview–Side** button from the toolbar.
- 12. Press [S] until you see the tool move around the clamp.



Tip: In this picture, the tool is shown shaded. To do this, choose **Display** from the **Backplot** menu, then **Appearance** and **Shaded**.

- 13. To verify the second clamp, choose the **Gview–Front** button from the toolbar.
- 14. Press [S] until you see the tool move around the clamp.



In this chapter and several previous ones, you've seen how you can create new toolpaths efficiently by copying and editing toolpaths. The next chapter will show you how to expand on this by directly saving and importing operations and making part programs more efficient by using subprograms.

11 Reusing Operations

In several previous chapters, you've seen how to create new operations efficiently by copying and editing existing operations. In this chapter, you will expand on this concept by using the following techniques:

- grouping geometry
- saving operations to a library and importing them into a new file
- importing an operation from another part file
- using subprograms to make your part program more efficient

Exercise 1 – Creating an operations library

One of the best ways to reuse operations is to save them to a library. An operations library is a file that contains a collection of toolpaths. These toolpaths can then be imported into a part file and applied to geometry in it. In this exercise, you will create some drilling operations and save them to a library.

Another way to reuse operations is to import one from a part file and apply it to geometry in your current file. In this exercise, you will also create a pocketing operation and save it with the file so you can import it into another file later. You will learn the following skills:

- Creating an operations library
- Saving operations to a library
- Creating a pocketing operation that can be imported into another file

Creating a center drill operation

 Open the file cover-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric. It should look like the following picture.



- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Drill.
- 3. Select each of the four holes as shown in the following picture.



- 4. Choose **Done**. Mastercam shows you the drilling order of the holes.
- 5. Choose Done.
- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 7. Clear the Filter Active check box.
- 8. Select a 10 mm center drill from the tool library.
- 9. Choose the Simple drill no peck tab.
- 10. Enter a **Depth** of **-2**.
- 11. Select the **Incremental** option for **Retract**, **Top of Stock**, and **Depth**.

Note: Selecting the Incremental option means that these values are relative to the chained geometry. This means that when you apply this operation to a different part, Mastercam will still drill to a depth of 2 mm even if the hole starts at a different Z-depth.

Tool parameters Simple drill - no peck Custom Drill Parameters 1 Clearance. 100.0 Cycle Г Absolute
 O Incremental Drill/Counterbore • 🔲 Use clearance only at the 1st peck 2.0 start and end of operation 10.0 Retract... Subsequent peck 2.0 🔿 Absolute 🛛 💿 Incremental 2.0 Peck 0.0 Top of stock.. 2.0 Chip break C Absolute C Incremental 0.0 Dwell Depth.. -2.0 Incremental C Absolute Shift 0.0 C Subprogram Tip comp.. C Absolute Incremental <u>0</u>K <u>C</u>ancel <u>H</u>elp

Your other parameters should match the following picture.

12. Choose **OK**. The drill path displays as shown in the following picture.



- 13. Choose Operations.
- 14. Right-click on **Toolpath Group 1** and choose **Groups, Rename operation group**.



15. Type the new name Drill Operations and press [Enter].

Adding the drill operation

You will copy the center drill operation and edit its parameters to create both the drill and tap operations. In this procedure, you will create the drill operation.

- 1. While the **Simple drill–no peck** operation is selected, right-click in the white area below it and choose **Copy**.
- Right-click again and choose Paste.
 Tip: You can also press [Ctrl + C] and [Ctrl + V] to copy and paste operations.
- 3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 to create a second copy. You should see three operations as shown in the following picture.



- 4. Choose the **Parameters** icon for operation 2.
- 5. Choose the Tool parameters tab.
- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 7. Select a 8.5 mm HSS drill from the tool library.
- 8. Choose the Simple drill-no peck tab.
- 9. Select the **Tip comp** check box. This turns on tip compensation and adds a breakthrough amount.
- 10. Change the **Depth** to **-18**.
- 11. Change the **Cycle** to **Peck drill** and enter the peck dimensions shown in the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Peck drill - full retrac	t Custom Drill Parameters 2	
	Clearance 100.0 Cyr Absolute C Incremental Person Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 Absolute © Incremental Depth 18.0 Imited Absolute © Incremental	cle eck drill 1st peck 2.0 Subsequent peck 2.0 Peck clearance 2.0 Chip break 2.0 Dwell 0.0 Shift 0.0
Tip comp	C Absolute C Incremental	
		<u>OK</u> _ancel <u>H</u> elp

12. Choose OK.

Adding the tap operation

- 1. Choose the **Parameters** icon for operation 3.
- 2. Choose the Tool parameters tab.
- 3. Right-click in the tool display area and choose **Get tool from library**.
- 4. You need to select a 10-1.5 right-hand tap from the tool library. Choose **Filter** to use the Tool List Filter to help find the right tool.
- 5. Choose None.
- 6. Choose the **Tap-RH** icon as shown in the following picture.

Tool List Filter	<u>?</u> ×
	Tool Diameter
	Radius Type
	Tool Material
Operation masking Unit masking Used by operations No unit masking	Image: Carbide Image: User Def 1 Image: Ti Coated Image: User Def 2 All Nong Copy job setup mati
<u>R</u> eset all	<u> </u>

- 7. Choose OK.
- 8. Select the 10-1.5 right-hand tap and choose **OK**.
- 9. Choose the Simple drill-no peck tab.
- 10. Select the **Tip comp** check box.
- 11. Change the **Depth** to **-18**.
- 12. Change the **Cycle** to **Tap**. Your other values should match the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Tapping - feed in, re	everse spindle - feed out Custom Drill Parar	meters 4	1
	Clearance 100.0 Cy C Absolute O Incremental	cle ap	•
	Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	1st peck	0
	Retract 10.0	Subsequent peck 2	0
	Absolute C Incremental	Peck 2.	.0
	<u>I op of stock</u> 0.0	Chip break.	.0
<u> </u>	Absolute Incremental	Dwell 0.	.0
	Absolute C Incremental	Shift 0.	0
	Subprogram	1	
	O Absolute 🛛 💿 Incremental		
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

13. Choose **OK**. Your operations list should now show the following three operations.



14. Choose Select All, Regen Path to regenerate the new operations.

Saving the drill operations to a library

1. Right-click in the operations list window and choose **Save to library**. Make sure all the operations are selected.



2. Enter the name **DrillOps** in the **Library Group Name** field, as shown in the following picture.

1 Operation Export	? ×
Library	
Select C:\MCAM9\MILL\OPS\OPERATM.OP9	
Library Group Name	
DrillOps	-
-	
Export operation's geometry	
Disable duplicate tool checking	
⊡	
🕀 😥 1 - Simple drill - no peck	
E C Peck drill - full retract	

3. Choose **OK**. The operations are now saved the library.

Creating the pocket toolpath

You will now create a toolpath to machine the pocket. Just like with the drilling operations, you will specify incremental values for the depths, so that you can more easily apply it to a different part.

- 1. Right-click in the operations list window and choose **Toolpaths**, **Pocket**.
- 2. Select the pocket boundary at the location shown in the following picture.



- 3. Choose Done.
- 4. Select a 10 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 5. Choose the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 6. Enter the values shown in the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters	
Pocket type: Standard Facing	Clearance 100.0 Clearance only at the start and end of operation CAbsolute CIncremental Eeed plane 50.0 CAbsolute CIncremental Eeed plane 10.0 CAbsolute CIncremental Paper Bapid retract 100 0 CAbsolute CIncremental Depth 112.0 CAbsolute CIncremental Depth 12.0 CAbsolute CIncremental	Machining direction Climb Conventional Tip comp Tip Roll cutter around corners None Linearization 0.001 XY stock to leave 0.0 Z stock to leave 0.0 Create additional finish operation th cuts Filter Adyanced
-	<u>D</u>)	K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 7. Choose the **Depth cuts** check box and button.
- 8. Enter the values shown in the following dialog box.

Depth cuts			? >
Max rough step # Finish cuts	5.0	Depth cut order	
Finish step	1.0		
🔲 Keep tool down		Tapered walls	
🔲 Use island depths		Outer wall taper angle 3.0	
C Absolute	Incremental	Island taper angle 3.0	
	<u> 0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

Note: The **Depth cut order – By pocket** setting means that if you chain multiple pockets to this operation, each pocket will be cleaned out completely before the tool moves to the next pocket.

- 9. Choose OK.
- 10. Choose the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.

ol parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters
Rough	Cutting method: Constant Overlap Spiral
Zigzag Constant Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners
	<u> </u>
Stepover percentage 75.0	Minimize tool burial Entry - helix
Stepover distance 7.5	Spiral inside to outside
Roughing angle	
✓ Finish	
No. of passes 1	Finish pass spacing 0.25
Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation computer
🔲 🔲 Start finish pass at closest entity	Optimize cutter comp in control
🗖 Keep tool down	Machine finish passes only at final depth
	☐ Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets
	<u> </u>

11. Enter the values shown in the following dialog box.

- 12. Choose Lead in/out.
- 13. Enter the values shown in the following dialog box.
| Lead In/Uut | ? × |
|---|---|
| | Overlap: 3.0 |
| Entry Line • Perpendicular • Tangent Length: • 0.0 * 0.0 Ramp height: • 0.0 Arc Radius: 100.0 * 10.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use point depth Enter on first depth cut only | Exit Line Perpendicular D.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 100.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use exit point Use point depth Exit on last depth cut only |

14. Choose **OK** twice. Your toolpath should look like the following picture.



15. Choose Select All, Backplot.



- 16. Choose the green **Gview–Isometric** button from the toolbar and toggle **Verify=N** so you can see the toolpaths more clearly.
- 17. Press [S] repeatedly to step through the toolpaths. They should look like the following picture.



- 18. When the backplot is done, choose **OK** and **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.
- 19. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 20. Choose **Main Menu**, **File**, **Save** and save the file as **pocket cover.mc9** in your working folder.

Exercise 2 – Importing operations

The part featured in this exercise requires that you machine holes and pockets with toolpath parameters similar to the last exercise. You will import the drill operations from the operations library and the pocket operation from the **pocket cover.mc9** file.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Grouping geometry
- Importing operations from a library
- Importing an operation from another MC9 file

Grouping the geometry

Use groups when you will want to use the same set of entities multiple times. Instead of selecting the different entities each time, you can use the group name as a shortcut. In this procedure, you will assign a group name to a set of holes that will be used for multiple drilling operations.

 Open the file cover2-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric. It should look like the following picture.



- 2. Choose Groups from the Secondary Menu.
- 3. Choose New.
- 4. Mastercam prompts you to enter a group name. Type the name **Drill Holes** and press [Enter].
- 5. Select each of the drill holes.
- 6. Choose **Done**. Your Groups dialog box should look like the following picture.

Groups	? ×
Number of groups: 1	
Drill Holes	<u>N</u> ew
	Add to
	<u>R</u> emove from
	<u>V</u> iew
	<u>D</u> elete
	Su <u>b</u> group
	<u>U</u> ndo sub
	<u>S</u> elect
	Colors
<u> </u>	<u>H</u> elp

7. Choose OK.

Importing the drill operations

You will import the drill operations from the library that you created in the previous exercise, then apply each operation to the group of holes.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Operations.
- 2. Right-click in the empty operations list and choose **Get from library**.
- 3. Choose the **DrillOps** group so that all the operations have a blue check mark in front of them. Your dialog box should look like the following picture.

🛐 Operation Import
Library <u>Select</u> C:\MCAM9\MILL\OPS\OPERATM.OP9
Calculate speeds and feeds Assign current system tool and construction planes Import operation's geometry Disable duplicate tool checking
DrillOps DrillOps 2 - Peck drill - no peck 2 - Peck drill - full retract 3 - Tapping - feed in, reverse spindle - feed out
<u> </u>

- 4. Choose OK.
- 5. Choose **No** at the following message.



6. Press [E] to expand all the operations. Your operations list should match the following picture.



- 7. For each operation, you can see "Geometry (0) points." This means that there are no points associated with any of the drilling operations. To add drill points to the first drilling operation, choose the **Geometry** icon for operation 1.
- 8. Choose Add pts, Entities, Group.
- 9. Choose Drill Holes from the Groups dialog box.
- 10. Choose **OK**. Mastercam adds all the holes from the group that you created ealier.
- 11. Choose **Done** three times. You can see the new holes listed in the operations list.



- 12. To quickly add the same holes to the other operations, click on the **Geometry** icon for operation 1 and drag it on top of the Geometry icon for operation 2.
- 13. Choose **Replace** from the menu.
- 14. Choose Yes at the following message.

Operatio	ns Manager 🛛 🔀
?	Retain depth values of merged drill points?
	Yes No

- 15. Repeat steps 12 through 14 for operation 3.
- 16. Choose **Select All, Regen Path**. Mastercam regenerates the drill toolpaths with the new holes added.

Importing the pocketing operation

- 1. Right-click in the operations list and choose Get from library.
- 2. Choose the **Select** button.
- 3. From the Save as type drop-list, choose All Files (*.*).
- 4. Locate and select the **pocket cover.mc9** file that you created in the previous exercise.
- 5. Choose the **Pocket** operation. The other settings should match the following picture.

🛐 Operation Import
Library Select C:\MCAM9\MILL\MC9\POCKET COVER.MC9
Calculate speeds and feeds
Assign current system tool and construction planes
Import operation's geometry
Disable duplicate tool checking
Chill Uper attors Chill Uper attors Chill Simple drill - no peck Chill - Peck drill - full retract Chill - Peck drill - feed in, reverse spindle - feed out Chill - Pocket (Standard)
<u>D</u> K <u>Cancel</u> <u>Help</u>

- 6. Choose OK.
- 7. Choose **No** at the following message.



You should see the Pocket operation added to the operations list.



- 8. Select the Geometry icon for the Pocket operation.
- 9. Right-click in the Chain Manager dialog box and choose Add chain.
- 10. Switch to Isometric view so you can see the top and bottom of the pockets more clearly.



- 11. Choose Chain, Options.
- 12. Choose **Plane Mask** as shown in the picture at right. Setting a plane mask means that when you chain one of the pocket boundaries, Mastercam won't try to chain the construction lines connecting the top and bottom boundaries of the pocket.
- 13. Choose OK.

Chaining Optior	าร	? ×
Entity mask Color mask Level mask Plane mask I Ignore dept Set start of Allow surfac	hs chain from point ce edges in Singl	ntity types: Points Lines Arcs Splines entities e mode
🗖 Default chaini	ng mode:	
💿 Full	 Parti 	al
□ — Direction for o	losed chains: —	
O CW	• CCV	,
Use curso	r position for mar	ual selection
- Search directi	on for open chai	ns:
C One way	• Zigz	ag
 Nested chains		
Sorting	next closest	•
Infinite ne	sting in area cha	ining
🗖 Reverse o	lirection of inner	chains
Sync mode	None	
Section stop ar	ngle:	30.0
Chaining tolera	nce:	0.002
<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

14. Select the pockets at the positions and in the order shown in the following picture.



Note: Make sure you select the top boundary of each pocket, not the bottom.

15. Choose **Done**. The Chain Manager now shows you the five chains you just added.

🚮 Chain Manager	? ×
ン Chain 1 Chain 2 ン Chain 3 ン Chain 4 ン Chain 5	Select
	<u>O</u> K Help

16. Choose **OK**, **Regen Path**. The completed toolpath should look like the following picture.



- 17. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 18. Save the file in your working folder as imported pockets.mc9.

Exercise 3 – Using subprograms

A subprogram is a section of an NCI file that is reused at different locations, thereby reducing the size of the file and of the NC program that results when you post it. The part in this exercise uses contour depth cuts; because the tool motion at each depth is the same, you will create a subprogram for the cutting pass that Mastercam will use for each depth cut. Subprograms can also be used on pocket depth cuts, circle mill toolpaths, drill toolpaths, and transform toolpaths.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating a subprogram
- Viewing the resulting NC file

Open the file and generate the toolpath

 Open subprogram-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric. It should look like the following picture.



- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Contour.
- 3. Chain the contour at position 1 as shown in the following picture. Make sure the arrow points in the clockwise direction. If it does not, choose **Reverse**.



- 4. Choose Done.
- 5. Select the 20 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 6. Select the Contour parameters tab.
- 7. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Contour parameters	
Image: Clearance of the state of the s	Compensation type: Computer Compensation direction: Left Optimize Image: Complementary of the second se
Contour type: 2D Multip: Chamfer Remachining	asses Lead in/out cuts

- 8. Choose the **Depth cuts** button.
- 9. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

epth cuts			?
Max rough step:	5.0	Depth cut order	C Du davath
# Finish cuts:	0	• By contour	U By depth
Finish step:	1.0		
📕 Keep tool down		Tapered walls	:
🔽 Subprogram		Taper angle:	0.0
C Absolute i	Incremental		

- 10. Choose OK.
- 11. Choose the Lead in/out button.
- 12. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Reusing Operations

Lead In/Out	Overl	? ar: 0.0	×
Gouge check entry/exit motion	0,000	abo I	
Entry		Exit	
Line		Line	
C Perpendicular C Tangent		C Perpendicular C Tangent	
Length: 0.0 % 0.0		Length: 0.0 % 0.0	
Ramp height: 0.0		Ramp height: 0.0	
- 410	->	- 410	
Radius: 100.0 % 20.0		Radius: 100.0 % 20.0	
Sweep: 90.0		Sweep:	
Helix height:		Helix height:	
🔲 Use entry point		🗖 Use exit point	
🔲 Use point depth		🗖 Use point depth	
Enter on first depth cut only		Exit on last depth cut only	
		<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

13. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



Post the operation and view the NC file

- 1. Choose Operations.
- 2. Choose Post.
- 3. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Post processing	? ×
Active post MPFAN.PST	Change <u>P</u> ost
NCI file Save NCI file Overwrite SAsk	∫ Edit
NC file Save NC file Overwrite Ask	I Edit NC extension ,nc
Send Send to machine	Comm

- 4. Choose OK.
- 5. Choose Save to save the NCI file as subprogram.nci.

6. Choose **Save** to save the NC file as **subprogram.nc**. Mastercam displays the NC file in the default text editor. The NC file should look like the following picture.

```
2
                       00000
                       (PROGRAM NAME - SUBPROGRAM)
(DATE=DD-MM-YY - 11-02-02 TIME=HH:MM - 14:51)
                       N100G21
                       N1 02G 0G17G40G49G80G90
                        /N104G91G28Z0.
                        /N106G28X0.Y0.
                       /N108G92X0.Y0.Z0.
                        ( 20. FLAT END MILL HSS TOOL - 1 DIA. OFF. - 41 LEN.
                       N110T1M6
                       N112G0G90X-92.349Y-49.532A0.S400M3
                       N114G43H1Z50.
                       N116Z10.
Tip: The M98 or
                       N1/8G12 4.F36.
N126<mark>M98</mark>P 001
N186G060 0250.
M99 code is a
subprogram
indicator.
                       N188Y-49.532
                       N190Z6.
                       N192G1Z-8.
                       N194M98P1001
                       N260G0G90Z50.
                       N262Y-49.532
                       N264Z2.
                       N266G1Z-12.
                       N268M98P1001
                       N334G0G90Z50.
                       N336M5
                       N338G91G28Z0.
                       N340G28X0.Y0.A0.
                       N342M30
                       2
```

The subprogram code replaces many blocks that would otherwise be repeated, reducing the size of the NC file.

- 7. Close the text editor.
- 8. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.
- 9. Save the file in your working folder as **cut-depth subprogram.mc9**.

This chapter completes the section on wireframe geometry. The rest of this tutorial introduces you to machining more sophisticated geometry such as surfaces and solids.

12 Choosing a Surface Type

The next several chapters introduce you to surface machining. A surface is a 2D or 3D bounded shape that has no thickness. This chapter explains the types of surfaces you can create with Mastercam and shows examples of each type. In the next chapter, you will create and machine some surfaces.

Draft

The Draft surface function creates a surface that has angled (or tapered) walls defined by a given length and angle. The following picture shows the draft surface that is created from a single chain of curves. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu**, **Create**, **Surface**, **Draft**.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 259

You can also use the Draft surface function to create a chain of curves that contains a single entity.



Ruled

The Ruled surface function creates a surface by transitioning between two or more chains of curves in the order that you select them and by using linear blending between each section of the surface. It is important to select each chain of curves at the same relative position to each other. The following picture shows the surface created when you select at positions 1, 2, and 3. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu**, **Create, Surface, Ruled**.



²⁶⁰ Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

The following picture shows the ruled surface that is created when you select at positions 1 and 2.



Loft

The Loft surface function creates a surface by transitioning between two or more chains of curves in the order that you select them and calculating a smooth blend by considering all the section chains at once. It is important to select each chain of curves at the same relative position to each other. The following picture shows the surface that is created when you select at positions 1, 2, and 3. Notice the difference between the Loft surface and the Ruled surface on the previous page using the same wireframe geometry. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu, Create, Surface, Loft**.





The loft surface shown in the following picture uses 40 cross-sections.

Revolved

The Revolved surface function creates a circular surface by driving the shape of a selected chain of curves about an axis using given start and end angles. Use Revolved when a cross-section and an axis can describe a surface, as shown in the following example. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu, Create, Surface, Revolve**.



The coffee cup shown in the following picture is another example of a revolved surface.

Note: The handle of the coffee cup is created separately using a swept surface function. It is not part of the revolved surface.



Swept

The Swept surface function creates many different surface configurations depending on the curves that you select. The system sweeps chains of curves called "across contours" over other chains of curves called "along contours." You can select any number of across curves if you are using one along curve. This surface type is shown in the following three pictures. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu**, **Create, Surface, Sweep**.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 263



Coons

The Coons surface function creates a surface from a grid of curves. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu, Create, Surface, Coons**.







Multiple Patch Coons



Multiple Patch Coons

Fillet

The Fillet surface function creates a fillet surface, which is mathematically equivalent to a series of arcs and is tangent to one or two surfaces based on the construction method you choose. Fillet surfaces can be created between a plane and a surface, between a curve and a surface, or between two surfaces. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu**, **Create, Surface, Fillet**. The following picture shows a surface to surface fillet example.



²⁶⁶ Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Trim, To surfaces

The Trim, To surfaces surface function trims surfaces to each other. You can create this surface type by choosing Main Menu, Create, Surface, Trim/extend, To surfaces.



Trim, Flat boundary

The Trim, Flat boundary surface function creates a flat, trimmed surface from one or more planar sets of curves. You can use this surface function to cap the ends of existing surfaces if the wireframe geometry that defines the surface edge exists. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu, Create, Surface, Trim/extend, Flat bndy**.

Note: You can select open or closed chains of curves. If you select open chains of curves, the system prompts you to close them.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 267

Offset

The Offset surface function creates a surface in which the offset surface is a fixed distance from an existing surface. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu**, **Create**, **Surface**, **Offset**.



2 Surface Blend

The 2 Surface Blend surface function creates a blended surface between two existing surfaces. This surface type is shown in the following example. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu**, **Create, Surface, Next menu, 2 surf blnd**.

Note: The blend direction and position you set for each selected surface affects the resulting surface.



²⁶⁸ Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

3 Surface Blend

The 3 Surface Blend surface function creates a blended surface between three existing surfaces. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu, Create, Surface, Next menu, 3 surf blnd**.

Note: The blend direction and position you set for each selected surface affects the resulting surface.



Fillet Blend

The Fillet Blend surface function blends three intersecting fillet surfaces to create one or more blend surfaces. You can create this surface type by choosing **Main Menu**, **Create**, **Surface**, **Next menu**, **Fillet blnd**.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 269

Now that you've been introduced to different surface types and their applications, you're ready to create a part with surfaces and machine it with surface toolpaths. The next chapter will show you how to do both.

13 *Creating and Machining Surfaces*

This chapter introduces you to Mastercam's surface machining capabilities. First, you will create several different kinds of surfaces. Then, you will create a number of different roughing and finishing surface toolpaths. In this chapter, you will work with the following types of surfaces:

- Ruled surfaces are created by a linear blend between several chains.
- Loft surfaces are created by a curved blend between several chains.
- Coons surfaces are created from grids of chains or curves.

Exercise 1 – Creating surfaces

In this exercise, you will open a part file that already has some wireframe geometry and add surfaces to it. The following pictures show the wireframe geometry and completed surfaces.





In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Defining surface attributes with the Entity Attributes Manager
- Creating a ruled surface
- Creating a loft surface
- Creating a Coons surface
- Creating surface fillets

Setting the level and color for the new surfaces

Organizing your work with levels can make working on complicated parts much easier. In this exercise, the wireframe geometry is on level 2, and you will create the surface geometry on level 3.

Use the Entity Attributes Manager to set default properties for surfaces so that when you create surfaces, they are automatically created in the proper color and placed on the proper level.

- 1. Open surfaces-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Attributes from the Secondary Menu.
- 3. Choose the EA Mgr check box and button.



- Find the line for Surfaces. Select the Level check box and enter
 This means that every time you create a surface, Mastercam will place it on level 3, regardless of what the current level is.
- 5. Select the **Color** check box. You want the surfaces to be green (color 10), which is the default color, so you do not need to change it. Your values should match the following picture.

y Attributes Mana <u>c</u>	jer Level	Color	Style	Width
Points			□ 	
Lines	 [1			
Arcs	<u> </u>	10		
Parametric splines	 1	10		
NURBS curves	 [1	10		
Surface curves	1	10		
Surfaces	▼ 3	10		
Notes/Labels	_ 1	10		
Leaders/Witness	_ 1	10		
Dimensions	_ 1	10		
Cross Hatches	_ 1	10		
Copious Data	<u> </u>	10		
Solids	<u> </u>	10		
Include entities cre	ated during File-Co	onvert		
Apply to e	xisting entities		OK Cancel	l Help

Tip: To change the default color when you don't know the number, right-click in the number field and choose **Select from dialog**. This will show you the same dialog box as when you choose the **Color** button from the Secondary Menu.



6. Choose OK twice.

Creating the ruled surfaces

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Surface, Ruled, Single.
- 2. Select the lines at position 1 and position 2.



Tip: If you used the Chain option instead of Single, only one ruled surface with rounded corners would be created. This would not follow the shape of the part.

- 3. Choose Done, Do it.
- 4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 for positions 3 and 4. (Before selecting the lines, choose **Single** to make sure you are using Single chaining.)
- 5. Repeat for positions 5 and 6. This creates a total of three ruled surfaces.

274 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Creating the loft surface

- 1. Choose **Backup**, Loft.
- 2. Select the arcs at positions 1, 2, and 3 in that order.



Tip: A ruled surface would not work for this geometry because it would create sharp corners in the middle of the surface. A Coons surface would not work because the sections are not connected.

3. Choose Done, Do it.

Creating the Coons surface

- 1. Choose Backup, Coons.
- 2. Choose **Yes** when you see the following message:

Automatic Coons Chaining	? ×
Use Automatic Coons Surface (haining?
[<u>Y</u> es] <u>N</u> o	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp
🔲 Don't ask again	

3. Select at positions 1 and 2.



- 4. Select at position 3.
- 5. Choose Do it.
- 6. Choose Backup.
- 7. Press [Alt + S] to see a shaded view of the surfaces. The surfaces should look like the following picture.



Note: Shading the surfaces makes selection easier when creating surface fillets.

Creating surface fillets between the loft and Coons surfaces

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Create, Surface, Fillet, Surf/surf.
- 2. Select the loft surface.
- 3. Choose Done.

276 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial
- 4. Select the Coons surface.
- 5. Choose Done.
- 6. Enter a radius of **6**
- 7. Choose Check norms, Cycle.
- 8. The surface normal (represented by the arrow) should point out as shown in the following picture. If it does not, choose **Flip** from the menu. When it is correct, choose **OK**.



- 9. Repeat step 8 for the next normal.
- 10. Choose **Do it**. The fillets should look like the following picture.





9. Choose Main Menu, File, Save and save the file in your working folder as surfaces1.mc9.

The part should look like the following picture.



Note: The next procedure is optional—capping the surfaces only makes the part look better. It does not change the toolpath.

Capping the ends of the surfaces

- 1. Choose
 - Main Menu
 - Create
 - Surface
 - ♦ Trim/extend
 - Flat bndy
 - ♦ Manual
- 2. Select the Coons surface.



3. Drag the arrow cursor to the edge of the surface and click once as shown in the following picture.



- 4. Choose End here, Do it.
- 5. When you see the following message, choose Yes.



6. Choose **Manual**, and repeat steps 2 through 5 for the two ends of the loft surface. The part should look like the following picture.



7. Press [Alt + A] to save the file.

Exercise 2 – Creating a rough parallel toolpath

The rough parallel toolpath removes the bulk of the material quickly. Using a flat endmill instead of a ball endmill also speeds up the material removal. This cutting method does not work well on parts with multiple bosses because the toolpath involves too much plunging. Parallel roughing is the most efficient roughing toolpath for this particular part. The completed toolpath should look like the following picture.



Note: The surfaces do not have to be trimmed in order to be machined. Mastercam automatically cuts only the highest surfaces.

This exercise shows you the following skills:

- Creating a rough parallel toolpath
- Using cutting direction
- Using cutting depths

• Defining the stock boundaries

- 1. Press [Alt + S] to turn off the shading on the part.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Job Setup.
- 3. Choose the Select corners button.

4. Select the geometry at position 1 and position 2.



Tip: Setting the stock limits is not necessary, but allows for more accurate toolpath verification.

5. Select the **Display stock** check box.

👔 Job Setup	? ×
Import Y Views 96.0 Jools Stock Origin × 60.0 60.0	? × Safety zone 120.0 45.0 ✓ Display stock
Y 0.0 Z 0.0 Select origin Select corners Toolpath Configuration Image: Comparison Comments to NCI Image: Comments to NCI	Eit screen to stock Bounding box NCI extents Tool Offset Registers Contract Image: Add Image: Contract Image: Contract
Assign tool numbers sequentially Warn of duplicate tool numbers Use tool's step, peck, coolant Search tool library when entering tool number Head number equals tool number Material	Feed Calculation Material From tool Maximum RPM 5000 Adjust feed on arc move Minimum arc feed 0.01
Post Processor MPFAN	<u> </u>

6. Choose OK.

Selecting the surfaces and surface parameters

- 1. Choose Surface.
- 2. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**. This tells Mastercam you want to machine all the surfaces.
- 3. Toggle **Contain** to **Y**. This tells Mastercam that you want to use a tool containment boundary to limit the tool's motion.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

<u>D</u> rive	1
C <u>A</u> D file	
<u>C</u> heck	
Con <u>t</u> ain	

Tip: Drive surfaces are surfaces that will be machined. Check surfaces are surfaces that Mastercam will avoid. Tool containment is geometry that serves as a "fence," setting limits for the tool motion. Choose CAD file to create a toolpath based on an external CAD file, instead of geometry in the current Mastercam file.

- 4. Choose Rough, Parallel, Boss.
- 5. Select the 12 mm flat endmill.

Note: All the tools you will need in this chapter have been saved with the part. You do not need to get them from the tool library.

- 6. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 7. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.



8. To determine the tool containment boundary, choose the **Select** button in the **Tool containment** section.

- 9. Choose Chain, Options.
- 10. Select the Plane mask option and choose OK.
- 11. Select the bottom of the part as shown in the following picture.



- 12. Choose **Done** to return to the Surface parameters dialog box.
- 13. Choose the **Direction** check box and button.
- 14. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Direction	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Plunge direction	Retract direction
Plunge angle 0.0	Retract angle 0.0
XY angle	XY angle 0.0
Plunge length 12.0	Retract length 0.0
Relative to Cut direction	Relative to Tool plane X axis
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp
ip: Setting a plunge length ir ff the part.	n the Direction dialog box allows the tool to plunge

15. Choose OK.

Entering the roughing parameters

- 1. Select the Rough parallel parameters tab.
- 2. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Rough	parallel parameters
Total tolerance 0.01667 Cutting method One way Image: Control in the standard s	Max. stepover 10.0 Machining 180.0 angle
 Prompt for starting point Allow negative Z motion along surface Allow positive Z motion along surface 	Cut gepths
	<u> </u>

Note: Selecting only the Allow positive Z motion along surface option limits the tool motion and prevents the tool from plunging into the material.

- 3. Choose the **Cut depths** button.
- 4. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Cut Depths		?	×
C Absolu	e	C Incremental	
Absolute depths		Incremental depths	
Minimum depth	0.0	Adjustment to top cut 0.2	
Maximum depth	-10.0	Adjustment to other cuts 0.2	
<u>S</u> elect depths		Critical depths	
Relative to	Tip 💌	<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

Tip: The adjustment to top cut option sets how far below the top of the surface the first cut lies. The adjustment to other cuts option sets how far above the bottom the last cut lies.

- 5. Choose **OK** twice.
- 6. Mastercam prompts you to select the starting point. Select near the front corner of the part as shown in the following picture.



Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture.



7. Press [Alt + T] to clear the toolpath display from the screen.

Exercise 3 – Creating a finish parallel toolpath

Using a finish parallel toolpath allows Mastercam to machine over all the surfaces of this part. Parallel finishing is the most efficient choice for this part. The completed toolpath should look like the following picture.



This exercise shows you the following skills:

- Creating a finish parallel toolpath
- Setting filter and tolerance values
- Using gap settings to reduce processing time

288 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Selecting the surface parameters

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface, Finish, Parallel.
- 2. Select the 12 mm ball endmill.
- 3. Select the **Surface parameters** tab.
- 4. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters F	inish parallel parameters	
Regen	Clearance 100.0 Absolute Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 50.0 Absolute Incremental Feed plane 10.0 Absolute Incremental Iop of stock 0.0 Absolute Incremental Direction	Tip Image: Constraint of the second seco
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 5. Choose the **Select** button in the **Tool containment** section.
- 6. Select the bottom of the part as shown in the following picture.



- 7. Choose Done.
- 8. Select the Finish parallel parameters tab.
- 9. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Surface Finish Parallel - C:\MCAM9\MILL\N	NCI\SURFACES1.NCI - MPFAN	×
Tool parameters Surface parameters Finish pa	arallel parameters	
Total tolerance	Max. stepover	
Cutting method Zigzag	Machining 0.0 angle	
Prompt for starting point		
	Depth limits <u>Gap settings</u> Advanced settings	
	<u> </u>	

- 10. Choose the **Total tolerance** button.
- 11. Choose a Filter ratio of 2:1.
- 12. Set the **Total tolerance** to **0.025**. Your other values should match the following dialog box.

		Total tolerance settings	? ×
		Filter ratio	2:1
		Filter tolerance	0.01667
		Cut tolerance	0.00833
		Total tolerance	0.025
Z-plane arcs Some controls aren't capable of machining arcs in the XZ or YZ planes. Check the documentation for your control before selecting these options. Also, verify that your post- processor is configured to		One way filtering Create arcs in XY Create arcs in XZ Create arcs in YZ Minimum arc radius	0.2
handle XZ and YZ arcs.		Maximum arc radius	
		<u> </u>	el <u>H</u> elp

Tip: The filter settings can reduce the size of the NC program. Collinear and nearly collinear moves (within the specified tolerance) are removed and arcs are inserted when possible to reduce the toolpath size.

Tip: The filter tolerance should be set to at least twice the cut tolerance. The filter ratio does this automatically.

13. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 291

Notice how long this toolpath takes to process. The next procedure shows you how to reduce the processing time by adjusting the gap settings.

Changing the gap settings

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the Surface Finish Parallel toolpath.
- 3. Choose the Finish parallel parameters tab.
- 4. Choose the Gap settings button.
- 5. Change the **Motion** to **Smooth**.
- 6. Clear the **Check gap motion for gouge** check box.

Tip: Setting the gap motion to Smooth creates smooth tool motion between passes. And since the tool motion between passes is on a flat plane, there is no need to check the gap motion for gouges. This setting reduces the time needed to process the toolpath.

- 7. Choose **OK** twice.
- 8. Choose Regen Path.

Gap settings	? ×
	<u>R</u> eset
Gap size	
C Distance	0.15
S % of stepover	300.0
Motion < Gap size, keep tool	down
Smooth	
Use plunge, retract rate in	
	<u>'99</u>
Motion > Gap size, retract—	
Check retract motion for g	jouge
C Optimize cut order	
Plunge into previously cut	t area
Follow tool center bounda	ary at gap
Tangential arc radius:	0.0
Tangential arc angle:	0.0
Tangential line length:	0.0
<u> </u>	l <u>H</u> elp

Mastercam regenerates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture. You should notice a reduction in the processing speed and smooth motion between the passes of the toolpath.



Exercise 4 – Creating a finish leftover toolpath

The finish leftover toolpath removes material left behind by the larger tool of the finish parallel toolpath. It also adjusts to different Z depths, unlike a restmill toolpath, which makes planar cuts at constant Z depths and is more appropriate for roughing operations. In this exercise, you will learn the following skill:

• Creating a finish leftover toolpath

Creating the finish leftover toolpath

- 1. Right-click in the Operations Manager and choose **Toolpaths**, **Surface finish**, Leftover.
- 2. Select the 5 mm ball endmill.
- 3. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 4. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.



- 5. Choose the Select button in the Tool containment section.
- 6. Select the bottom of the part as shown in the following picture.



- 7. Choose Done.
- 8. Select the Finish leftover parameters tab.
- 294 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

9. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters	Finish leftover parameters Leftover material parameters
Total tolerance 0.025	Cutting method 3D Collapse
Max. stepover	Hybrid (constant Z cuts above cut off angle, 3d cuts below)
Prompt for starting point	Extension length 5.0
From slope angle	Keep cuts perpendicular to leftover region
To slope angle	Machining direction
	Expand inside to outside
	Depth limits Collapse Gap settings Advanced settings
	OK Cancel Help

- 10. Select the Leftover material parameters tab.
- 11. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Finish lefto	ver parameters	Leftover material parame	eters	
Calculate remaining material from roughing tool				
Roughing tool diameter:	12.0			
Roughing tool corner radius:	6.0			
Overlap distance:	1.0			
		<u> </u>	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

12. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture. It can take several minutes to generate the toolpath.



296 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Note: If you receive an error message stating that the toolpath allocation is too low, choose **Main Menu, Screen, Configure** and select the **Allocations** tab. Increase the value for the **Toolpath allocation in Kbytes** option and choose **OK**. Finally, regenerate the operation. This increases the amount of RAM designated for toolpath functions.

Exercise 5 – Creating a finish pencil toolpath

On this geometry, the finish pencil toolpath cleans up more of the material by driving the cutter tangent to two surfaces at a time. This exercise shows you the following skills:

- Creating a finish pencil toolpath
- Verifying the toolpath

Creating the finish pencil toolpath

- 1. Right-click in the Operations Manager and choose **Toolpaths**, **Surface finish**, **Pencil**.
- 2. Select the 2 mm ball endmill.
- 3. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 4. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters F	inish pencil parameters	
Begen	Clearance 100.0 C Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 50.0 Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 10.0 Absolute Incremental Rapid retract Iop of stock 0.0 Absolute Incremental Direction	Tip Image: Constraint of the surface of the surfac
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 5. Choose the **Select** button in the **Tool containment** section.
- 6. Select the bottom of the part as shown in the following picture.



- 7. Choose Done.
- 8. Select the Finish pencil parameters tab.

9. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Surface Finish Pencil - C:\MCAM9\MILL\NCI\SURFACES1.NCI - MPFAN	? ×
Tool parameters Surface parameters Finish pencil parameters	
Total tolerance	
Machining direction Climb Conventional	
Prompt for starting point	
I Allow negative Z motion along surface	
I Allow positive ∠ motion along surface	
Depth limits Gap settings Advanced setti	ngs
<u> </u>	lp

10. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture.



Verifying all the surface toolpaths

You can verify the toolpaths to see the stock removal. Verifying all the toolpaths can take a number of minutes, depending on the speed of your computer.

- 1. If necessary, press [Alt + O] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose Select All, Verify.
- 3. Choose the **Configure** button \mathbb{P} on the Verify toolbar.
- 4. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box and choose **OK.**

erify configuration: Cu	urrent MC9				? ×
_ Shape	Boundaries				<u>N</u> Cl file
 Box Cylinder 	Scan <u>t</u> oolpath(s)	Min po X 0.0	pint: Max poir 120.0	nt: Margins:	Current MC9
🔿 File	Use <u>J</u> ob Setup values	Y -48.0	48.0	0.0	
- Cylinder axis	Pick stock corners	z -45.0	5.0	0.0	
OX OY ©Z ☑ Center on axis	Initial stock size source Scan toolpath(s) Job Setup Use last size	Cylind	ler diameter:	0.002	
Stock file:		<u>S</u> et cold	ors 🗖 Tr	ranslucent stock	
Tool Tool Turbo (no tool) Solid tool Solid tool Change tool/color Stop on tool change Stop on collision	Profile Mov C Auto C As defined Speed	y control es/step: es/refresh: date after each	10 100000 - Uuality h toolpath	Miscellaneous Use TrueSoli Cutter compe Display XYZ Display coor Create log filk Compare to S Remove chip	id ensation in control axes dinates es STL file 38
		<u>R</u> eset	<u> <u> </u></u>	<u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

5. Choose the **Machine** button **>** on the Verify toolbar.

Mastercam runs through the toolpaths and displays the verification results, which should look like the following picture.



- 6. Choose the **Close** button on the Verify toolbar to return to the Operations Manager.
- 7. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 8. Press [Alt + A] to save the file.

Now that you have experience with creating surface toolpaths, the next two chapters will show you more types of surface toolpaths and their applications.

14 Surface Roughing

In the previous chapter, you roughed a part with a rough parallel toolpath. This chapter focuses on more roughing toolpaths that you can use for surface machining, including:

- rough pocket
- rough plunge
- restmill
- high-speed rough pocket

Mastercam also includes rough flowline, contour, and radial toolpaths. These are the same as finish flowline, contour, and radial toolpaths except that the roughing toolpaths allow multiple Z cuts. Finish flowline, contour, and radial toolpaths are discussed in the next chapter.

Exercise 1 – Creating a rough pocket toolpath

Rough pocket toolpaths remove a lot of stock quickly and prepare the part for the finish toolpath. Another benefit of using a rough pocket toolpath on a part is that you can start the toolpath at a point off the part and prevent the tool from plunging into the material. A rough pocket toolpath also creates a series of planar cuts (or constant Z), which is the preferred cutting method for most roughing tools. You will use the following part.



This exercise shows you the following skills:

- Creating a rough pocket toolpath
- Creating a tool containment boundary

Creating the tool containment boundary

In the previous chapter, you selected geometry that Mastercam used as a tool containment boundary. Since the tool containment boundary has to be wireframe geometry, and this part has only surfaces, you will create a wireframe boundary that you can use for the tool containment.

- 1. Open the file rough pocket-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Create, Curve, All edges.
- 3. Select the flat surface as shown in the following picture.



4. Choose **Done**, **Do it**. Mastercam creates lines around the outer border and curves around the inner border.

Note: You might need to repain the screen to see the new geometry. Choose the \square button on the toolbar.

Selecting the surface parameters

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 2. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**. This tells Mastercam that you want to machine all the surfaces.
- 3. Toggle Contain to Y.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

<u>D</u> rive	A
C <u>A</u> D file	N
<u>C</u> heck	N
Con <u>t</u> ain	Υ

- 4. Choose Rough, Pocket.
- 5. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 10 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 6. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 7. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Rou	igh pocket parameters	
	Clearance 100.0 Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 Absolute C Incremental	Tip comp Tip Drive surface/solid Stock to leave 1.0 Select (8 selected)
Begen	Eeed plane 2.0 C Absolute Incremental Rapid retract 0.0 Iop of stock 0.0 Absolute Incremental Direction Direction	Stock to leave 0.0 Select (0 selected) Tool containment Compensate to: C Inside C Center C Outside Additional offset 0.0 Select (1 selected)
		<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 8. Choose the Select button in the Tool containment section.
- 9. Select the outer boundary of the part as shown in the following picture.



10. Choose **Done** to return to the Surface parameters dialog box.

Entering the roughing parameters

- 1. Select the **Rough pocket parameters** tab.
- 2. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface p	rameters Rough pocket parameters
(Total tolerance) 0.0 Max stepdown: 2.0	25
Rough	Cutting method Constant Overlap Spiral
	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, High Speed True Spiral One Way
Stepover percentage:	75.0 Spiral inside to outside
Stepover distance:	7.5 Minimize tool burial High speed
Roughing angle:	0.0 🗖 Use quick zigzag
Finish Number of passes:	Image: The second se
© Climb	C Conventional Cut gepths Gap settings Advanced settings
	<u>QK</u> <u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp

Note: The selections in the previous picture instruct Mastercam to both **Plunge outside the tool center boundary** and to create an **Entry – helix** move. Mastercam will use a helical entry only where it is not possible to plunge outside the part—in the case of this part, when it machines the hollow on the front of the part.

- 3. Choose the Entry helix (or Entry Ramp) check box and button.
- 4. Choose the **Helix** tab.
- 5. Enter the values shown in the following dialog box.

Helix/Ramp Parameters					? X
Helix Ramp					
Minimum radius:	50.0 %	5.0		C rrw	7
Maximum radius:	100.0 %	10.0	~ ~~~	- ccm	
Z clearance:	[2.0	Follow boundar	y	
XY clearance:	[2.0	Con failure only if length exceeds:	50.0	
Plunge angle:	ſ	3.0	- If all entry attempts	fail	
🔽 Output arc moves			Plunge	C Skip	
Tolerance:	ſ	0.02	🔽 Save skipp	ed boundary	
Center on entry po	int		Entry feed rate	C Feed rate	
				Cancel <u>H</u>	elp

6. Choose **OK** twice.

Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture.



Even though this was a pocket toolpath, it also roughs the outside of the part in addition to the pocket on the front of the part. Instead of using straight linear cuts like you did in the previous chapter, this toolpath uses the Constant Overlap Spiral cutting method which more closely approximates the part contour for a more effective roughing operation.

7. Save the file in your working folder as rough spiral.mc9.

Exercise 2 – Creating a rough plunge toolpath

Rough plunge toolpaths rough a part quickly using a drilling-type motion. Shops that use these toolpaths often invest in special end cutting tools that have a flat bottom to remove stock quickly but can move coolant through the center of the tool to remove chips. Plunge roughing is an appropriate toolpath for deep cavities.

Mastercam gives you two techniques for creating rough plunge toolpaths:

- The zigzag method defines a rectangular grid and the tool plunges at intervals along it.
- The NCI method lets the tool plunge at intervals along a previously created toolpath.

The NCI option gives you much more control over the plunging actions, and will be shown in this exercise. The wireframe and surface geometry for the part is shown in the following picture.



This exercise shows you the following skills:

- Creating a rough plunge toolpath using an NCI file
- Using absolute cut depths
- Using check surfaces to restrict the toolpath

Creating the pocket toolpath

- 1. Open the file rough plunge-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Pocket.
- 3. Select the green circle above the part.



4. Choose Done.

- 5. Select the 10 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 6. Choose the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 7. Enter the values shown in the following picture.

Tool parameters	Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters	
		Cjearance 2.0 C Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the	Machining direction Climb C Conventional
Į	┱╵┌─	start and end of operation Fietract 0.25 C Absolute C Incremental	Roll cutter around corners Sharp 💽
		Eeed plane 0.0	Linearization 0.001
		C Absolute C Incremental	XY stock to leave
	·	Top of stock 0.0	Z stock to leave
		Absolute O Incremental	Create additional finish operation
		<u>D</u> epth	
		C Absolute 💿 Incremental	
Pocket type:	Standard		e <u>oth</u> outs 🗖 F <u>ilter</u>
Facing	Re <u>mac</u> hining	Dpen <u>p</u> ockets	Advanced
		<u> </u>	<u>DK</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Note: The depth values are not important, since you won't actually be cutting the part at these depths. Instead, Mastercam will project this toolpath onto the part when you create the surface toolpath.

- 8. Choose the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 9. Enter the values shown in the following picture.

ool parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters
Rough	Cutting method: Parallel Spiral
Zigzag Constant Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners
Stepover percentage 75.0	Minimize tool burial Entry - helix
Stepover distance 7.5	Spiral inside to outside
Roughing angle	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
Finish	
No. of passes 1	Finish pass spacing 0.25
🔽 Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation computer
📕 🗖 Start finish pass at closest entity	Optimize cutter comp in control
🗖 Keep tool down	Machine finish passes only at final depth
	Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets
	OK Cancel Help

10. Choose **OK**. Mastercam creates the toolpath.



11. Choose the green **Gview–Top** button from the toolbar see the toolpath more clearly. Your toolpath should look like the following picture.



12. Press [Alt + T] to clear the toolpath from the screen.



13. Choose the green **Gview–Isometric** button from the toolbar to return the screen to isometric view.

Disabling posting for the pocket toolpath

Mastercam has an option that lets you disable posting for an operation. Since you will not actually be cutting the pocket toolpath, just the surface toolpath that you will create in the next procedure, you should disable posting for it so you do not accidentally include it in your NC program.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Right-click in the window and choose Options, Posting, Off.

The following icon appears in the Operations Manager.



3. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.

Creating the surface toolpath

- 1. Choose Surface.
- 2. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.

Your options should match the following picture.

А
N
N
Y

Note: Rough Plunge toolpaths don't use tool containment boundaries, so the Contain setting doesn't matter.

- 3. Choose Rough, Plunge.
- 4. Select the 10 mm HSS flat endmill.
- 5. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 6. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.
Surface Roughing

Tool parameters Surface parameters Ro	ough	plunge parameters	
	▼	Clearance 50.0	Tip comp
		Absolute O Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	Drive surface/solid Stock to leave
	◄	Retract 6.0	Select (131 selected)
		Absolute O Incremental	Check surface/solid
		Eeed plane 2.0	Stock to leave 0.0
		Absolute O Incremental	Sele <u>c</u> t (0 selected)
	_		Tool containment
		Top of stock	C Inside C Center C Outside
		Absolute O Incremental O	Additional offset 0.0
Regen		<u>□</u> irection	Select (0 selected)
			<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Entering the rough plunge parameters

- 1. Select the Rough plunge parameters tab.
- 2. Choose the NCI option for Plunge path.
- 3. Select the pocket toolpath from the operations list in the **Source** window. Mastercam will use the NCI file from this operation to project the toolpath onto the drive surfaces you've selected.
- 4. Enter the other values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters	Rough plunge parameters
Total tolerance 0.025 Max stepdown: 100.0 Plunge path • • NC • NC • Zigzag Maximum stepover: 4.0	Source operations: Toolpath Group 1 Parameters #1 - M10.00 ENDMILL1 FLAT - 10. FLAT END MILL HSS Geometry (1) chain(s) POSTING OFF Cut gepths
	<u> </u>

- 5. Choose the **Cut depths** button.
- 6. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Depths	? 🗙
Absolute	C Incremental
Absolute depths	Incremental depths
Minimum depth -200.0	Adjustment to top cut 0.2
Maximum depth	Adjustment to other cuts 0.2
Detect flats	Detect flats
Select depths	C <u>r</u> itical depths
Clear depths	Clear depths
Adjust for stock to leave on drive surfaces	(Note: drive stock is included in adjustment.)
Relative to	KCancel Help

7. Choose OK twice.

Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture.



8. Save the file in your working folder as NCI plunge.mc9.

Using check surfaces to restrict the toolpath

After inspecting the toolpath, you realize that the tool is plunging on the shallow outer rim of the part. For a plunge toolpath, this is wasted tool activity. In this procedure, you will edit the surface selection so that the toolpath avoids these surfaces.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the Surface Rough Plunge operation.
- 3. On the **Surface parameters** tab, choose the **Select** button in the **Check surface/solid** section.
- 4. Choose Add.
- 5. Choose the two outer surfaces as shown in the following picture.



- 6. Choose **Done** twice to return to the Surface parameters dialog box. Mastercam will now avoid those two surfaces when creating the toolpath.
- 7. Enter **1.0** for the **Stock to leave** in the **Check surface/solid** section. Your new settings should match the following picture.



Note: Notice that Mastercam automatically updated the number of drive surfaces.

- 8. Choose OK.
- 9. Choose **Regen Path**. The new toolpath should look like the following picture. You can see that all the new plunge points are inside the well of the part.



10. Press [Alt + A] to save the file.

Exercise 3 – Creating a restmill toolpath

Restmilling is the only roughing toolpath that cleans up remaining stock with a roughing, planar (constant Z) cut motion. Because restmilling uses multiple Z cuts to remove the remaining stock, it is much more effective than a finish leftover toolpath for operations where the roughing operation has left a lot of stock to remove. (A finish leftover toolpath goes directly to the bottom of the remaining stock, so it is appropriate for finishing operations where a smaller amount of stock remains.) The following pictures show the wireframe and surface geometry for the part.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Using a restmill toolpath to clean up leftover stock
- Automatically detecting critical depths

Choosing the surfaces and surface parameters

- 1. Open the file **restmill-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric**.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.
- 4. Toggle Contain to Y.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

<u>D</u> rive	A
C <u>A</u> D file	N
<u>C</u> heck	N
Con <u>t</u> ain	Y

- 5. Choose Rough, Pocket.
- 6. Select the 18 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 7. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Surface Roughing

Tool parameters Surface parameters Ro	ugh pocket parameters	
Begen	 Clearance 100.0 Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 50.0 Absolute C Incremental Eeed plane 5.0 Absolute C Incremental Top of stock 0.0 Absolute C Incremental Direction 	Tip Image: Constraint of the surface/solid Drive surface/solid 0.5 Stock to leave 0.5 Select (88 selected) Check surface/solid 0.0 Stock to leave 0.0 Select (0 selected) Tool containment Compensate to: O Inside Center Dutside Additional offset 0.0 Select (0 selected)
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 9. Choose the Select button in the Tool containment section.
- 10. Choose Chain, Options.
- 11. Select the Plane mask option and choose OK.
- 12. Select the bottom of the part as shown in the following picture.



13. Choose **Done** to return to the Surface parameters dialog box.

Entering the pocket parameters

- 1. Select the **Rough pocket parameters** tab.
- 2. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface p	rameters Rough pocket parameters	
Total tolerance 0.0 Max stepdown: 5.0	Entry - helix	
Rough	Cutting method Constant Overlap Spiral	
	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, High Speed True Spiral One Way	
Stepover percentage:	50.0 Spiral inside to outside	
Stepover distance:	9.0 Minimize tool burial High speed	
Roughing angle:	0.0 Use quick zigzag	
Finish Number of passes:	1 Finish pass spacing: 1.0 Image: Finish containment boundary	
Climb	C Conventional Cut gepths Gap settings Advanced settings]
	<u> </u>	

- 3. Choose the Entry helix (or Entry ramp) check box and button.
- 4. Choose the **Helix** tab.
- 5. Enter **3** for the **Minimum radius**.
- 6. Enter **25** for the **Maximum radius**. Your values should match the following dialog box.

lelix/Ramp Parameter	\$		× ?
Minimum radius: Maximum radius: Z clearance: XY clearance:	16.66667 % 138.88889 %	3.0 25.0 2.0 2.0	Direction C CW CCW ✓ Follow boundary ✓ On failure only if length exceeds: 50.0
Plunge angle: I Output arc mov Tolerance:	es	3.0 0.02	If all entry attempts fail
Center on entry	point		Entry feed rate Plunge rate C Feed rate
			<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 7. Choose OK.
- 8. Choose Cut depths.
- 9. Choose **Detect flats** in the **Incremental depths** section. Mastercam automatically identifies the tops of the islands and creates cutting passes at those heights. Your other settings should match the following picture.

C Absolute	Incremental
Absolute depths	Incremental depths
Minimum depth 0.0	Adjustment to top cut 0.2
Maximum depth	Adjustment to other cuts 0.2
Detect flats	Detect flats Critical depths
Clear depths	Cl <u>e</u> ar depths
Adjust for stock to leave on drive surfac	(Note: drive stock is included in adjustment.)

- 10. Choose OK twice.
- 11. Choose **OK** at the following message.

₩arning	-
⚠	With finish passes disabled, tool may engage a large amount of material in lower pockets.

Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



Verifying the toolpath

Use the Verify function to see the toolpath more clearly.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose Verify.
- 3. Choose the Machine button > on the Verify toolbar.
- 4. When the verification is done, right-click in the graphics window and choose **Dynamic spin**.
- 5. Move the mouse to rotate the part as shown in the following picture, so you can see the stock removal inside the pocket. Click the mouse to anchor the view. You can see the areas where the tool couldn't reach. The next procedure will show you how to clean these out with a restmill toolpath.



6. Close the Verify toolbar to return to the Operations Manager.

Creating the restmill toolpath

- 1. Right-click in the Operations Manager window and choose **Toolpaths, Surface rough, Restmill**.
- 2. Select the 6 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 3. Choose the Surface Parameters tab.
- 4. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Surface Roughing

Tool parameters Surface parameters Re	estmill parameters 🛛 Restmaterial parame	eters
Tool parameters Surface parameters Re	estmill parameters Restmaterial parameters Restmaterial parameters 100.0 © Absolute © Incremental © Use clearance only at the start and end of operation © Retract 50.0 © Absolute © Incremental Eeed plane 5.0 © Absolute © Incremental © Rapid retract Iop of stock 0.0 © Absolute © Incremental © Direction	terrs Tip comp Tip Drive surface/solid Stock to leave 0.5 Select (88 selected) Check surface/solid Stock to leave 0.0 Stock to leave 0.0 Select (0 selected) Tool containment Compensate to: C Inside Center Outside Additional offset 0.0 Select (0 selected)
<u> </u>		<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 5. Choose the **Select** button in the **Tool containment** section.
- 6. Select the bottom of the part as shown in the following picture.



Note: The plane mask is still in effect from the previous procedure.

- 7. Choose **Done** to return to the Surface parameters dialog box.
- 8. Choose the **Restmill parameters** tab.
- 9. Make sure your selections match the following dialog box.

Total tolerance 0.025 Maximum stepdown: 2.0 Corner rounding radius: 2.0 Stepover: 2.0 Extension distance: 0.0 Printy/exit arc 5.0 Radius: 5.0 Sweep: 90.0 Allow arc outside boundary Eetix Optimize cut order 0.0 Order cuts bottom to top Cut depths Order cuts bottom to top Cut depths	Tool parameters Surface parameters	Restmill parameters Restmaterial parameters
Extension distance: 0.0 Entry/exit arc 5.0 Radius: 5.0 Sweep: 90.0 Allow arc outside boundary Loop length: Prompt for starting point Helix Optimize cut order Cut depths Order cuts bottom to top Cut depths	Total tolerance 0.025 Maximum stepdown: 2.0 Corner rounding radius: 2.0 Stepover: 2.0	Direction of closed contours Direction of open contours Climb Conventional Start length: 0.0
	Extension distance: 0.0 Entry/exit arc Radius: 5.0 Sweep: 90.0 Allow arc outside boundary	C High speed Image: Broken C Ramp C Follow surface Image: Im
	 Prompt for starting point Optimize cut order Order cuts bottom to top 	Leix Cut gepths Gap settings Advanced settings

- 10. Choose the Restmaterial parameters tab.
- 11. Make sure your selections match the following dialog box.

Adjustments to remaining stock:	Tool parameters Surface parameters Restmill parameters Restmill parameters Compute remaining stock from: Call previous operations One other operation Use regen file Roughing tool Diameter: 40.0 Corner radius: 0.0 Stock resolution: 0.5	material parameters
Adjust remaining stock to mill small cusps	Adjustments to remaining stock: C Use remaining stock as computed C Adjust remaining stock to ignore small cusps C Adjust remaining stock to mill small cusps distance:	nt 0.05

Tip: You can restmill stock left over from one or more earlier operations in the current file, or you can let Mastercam simulate a previous roughing operation by choosing the **Roughing tool** option and entering the tool dimensions.

12. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



Verifying the restmill toolpath

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose Select All, Verify.
- 3. Choose the Machine button
 on the Verify toolbar.
- 4. When the verification is done, right-click in the graphics window and choose **Dynamic spin**.
- 5. Move the mouse to rotate the part as shown in the following picture, so you can see the results achieved by the restmill toolpath. Click the mouse to anchor the view.



- 6. Close the Verify toolbar to return to the Operations Manager.
- 7. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 8. Save the file in your working folder as **restmill rough.mc9**.

Exercise 4 – Creating a high speed pocket toolpath

High speed surface machining is often performed using smooth tool motion, which means that throughout the entire toolpath, arcs or small line segments are smoothly connected without sharp corners. Mastercam provides several options for creating the smoothest possible tool motion between gaps in the toolpath and between depth cuts in the Z axis. In this exercise, you will create a trochoidal toolpath, in which the tool moves in small loops when it is in full contact with the material to minimize tool burial and optimize chip load.

In addition, you will create a separate operation that automatically calculates all the plunge points required by the toolpath and pre-drills them. To make the toolpath even more efficient, Mastercam can automatically align the plunge points at each cutting depth. The part you will machine is shown in the following picture.



This exercise shows you the following skills:

- Creating a high speed rough pocket toolpath
- Aligning plunge points
- Pre-drilling start holes

Choosing the surfaces and surface parameters

- 1. Open the file **highspeed rough-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric**.
- 2. If necessary, press [Alt + S] to turn on surface shading.
- 3. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 4. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.
- 5. Toggle Contain to N.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

<u>D</u> rive	Α
C <u>A</u> D file	N
<u>C</u> heck	N
Contain	N

- 6. Choose Rough, Pocket.
- 7. Select the 12 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 8. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 9. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters	Rough pocket parameters	
	Clearance 100.0 C Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	Tip comp Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip Tip
	Retract 50.0 C Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 5.0 C Absolute Incremental	Select (23 selected) Check surface/solid Stock to leave 0.0 Select (0 selected)
Begen	Rapid retract Iop of stock O.0 Absolute O Incremental Direction	Tool containment Compensate to: C Inside C Center C Outside Additional offset 0.0 Select (0 selected)
		<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Entering the pocket parameters

- 1. Select the **Rough pocket parameters** tab.
- 2. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameter [Total tolerance] 0.025 Max stepdown: 2.0	s Rough pocket parameters	
Rough	Cutting method High Speed	
Zigzag Constant	arallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, High Speed True Spiral One Way	
Stepover percentage: 75.0	Spiral inside to outside	
Stepover distance: 9.0	☐ Minimize tool burial <u>High speed</u>	
Roughing angle: 0.0	🗖 Use quick zigzag	
✓ Finish Number of passes: 1	Finish pass spacing: 0.25	
Climb C	onventional Cut <u>d</u> epths <u>G</u> ap settings Advanc <u>e</u> d settings]
	<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	

Note: Because the walls of the pocket are tapered, the plunge points for each cutting pass would normally be shifted slightly at each new depth. Selecting **Align plunge entries for start holes** means that Mastercam keeps them lined up, so you can pre-drill just one hole.

- 3. Choose the High speed button.
- 4. Select **Full material only** for the **Trochoidal cuts** option. This means that the tool will loop only when it is full contact with the material; when it is partial contact, it will follow the toolpath normally.
- 5. Enter the loop dimensions shown in the following dialog box.

High Speed parameters ? 🗙
Trochoidal cuts:
C Off C Full material only C Entire pocket
Loop radius: 5.0
Loop spacing: 5.0
Corner smoothing radius: 2.0
<u> </u>

6. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



Because of the island in the middle of the part, a single plunge point for the cutting passes at the lower depths would result in an unmachinable toolpath. Mastercam recognized the island and automatically added a second plunge point. However, it still aligned the plunge points in each half of the pocket, minimizing the start hole drilling.

Backplotting the toolpath

Backplot the toolpath to see how Mastercam creates the loops.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. Switch to Gview-Top.
- 4. Press [S] several times. You will see the toolpath start to develop as shown in the following picture.



- 5. Press [Esc] and choose **OK** to end the backplot.
- 6. Switch back to Gview–Isometric.

Creating the start hole operation

- 1. Choose **Backup** to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Right-click and choose **Toolpaths**, **Circle paths**, **Drill start holes**.
- 3. Enter an Additional diameter amount of 3, to provide some clearance for the tool.
- 4. Choose the **Basic** option. Your selections should match the following dialog box.

⊡	Additional diameter amount 3.0
🗄 💓 1 - Surface Rough Pocket	Additional depth amount 0.0
	Basic or Advanced
	 Basic - create drill operations only - no spot or step drilling
	C Advanced - display advanced options dialog after selecting OK button
	Tool library
	METRICST52.TL9
	Diameter match tolerance 0.01
	Comment
	<u>स</u>

5. Choose **OK**. Mastercam creates the new drilling operation as shown in the following picture. Even though you created the drilling operation after the pocketing operation, Mastercam automatically places it first, so the operations are in their proper machining sequence.



Mastercam automatically calculates peck amounts and other parameters. You can edit any of the drilling parameters by choosing the Parameters icon for the drill operation.

The drill toolpath should look like the following picture.



Note: The start hole operation and the pocket operation are **not** associative with each other. This means that if you change the pocket toolpath, you need to delete the start hole operation and recreate it.

- 6. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 7. Save the file in your working folder as highspeed-align.mc9.

Now that you've see a sampling of Mastercam's surface roughing capabilities, you're ready to use some surface finishing techniques. The next chapter will show you several examples.

15 Surface Finishing

This chapter introduces some of the finishing toolpaths you can use in surface machining. Finish toolpaths remove material left behind by previous roughing toolpaths. This chapter shows you examples of the following finishing toolpaths:

- ◆ parallel steep
- parallel shallow
- radial
- ♦ project
- ♦ contour
- shallow contour
- ♦ scallop
- ♦ flowline

Other surface finishing toolpaths include finish parallel, leftover, and pencil toolpaths. These were shown in Chapter 13.

Exercise 1 – Using finish steep and shallow toolpaths

Using finish steep and shallow toolpaths on the following part makes sense because a finish parallel toolpath would miss material in the steep areas of the part and a finish contour toolpath would miss material in the shallow areas of the part (see the following pictures). A finish parallel steep toolpath is usually used after a finish parallel toolpath.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating a finish parallel steep toolpath
- Creating a finish shallow toolpath
- Using tangential arcs for gap settings

Creating the parallel steep toolpath

- 1. Open the file **steep-shallow-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric**.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**. This tells Mastercam that you want to machine all the surfaces.
- 4. Toggle **Contain** to **N**. This tells Mastercam that you will not create a tool containment boundary.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

<u>D</u> rive	Α
C <u>A</u> D file	N
<u>C</u> heck	N
Con <u>t</u> ain	N

- 5. Choose Finish, Par. Steep.
- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 6 mm HSS ball endmill from the tool library.
- 7. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Finish parallel steep parameters				
	Clearance 100.0	Tip comp		
	Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	Drive surface/solid		
	Retract 50.0	Select (5 selected)		
	Absolute O Incremental	Check surface/solid		
	Feed plane 5.0	Stock to leave 0.0		
	C Absolute 💿 Incremental 🔽 Rapid retract	Sele <u>o</u> t (U selected)		
	T <u>op of</u> stock 0.0	Compensate to:		
	C Absolute C Incremental	Additional offset 0.0		
<u>R</u> egen	Direction	Select (0 selected)		
		<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp		

- 9. Select the Finish parallel steep parameters tab.
- 10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters	Finish parallel stee	p parameters	
Total tolerance 0.025	<u>M</u> ax. stepover	2.0	Steep range
Machining 0.0	Cutting method	Zigzag 💌	From 50.0
Prompt for starting point	Cut extension	0.25	To 90.0 slope angle
			Include cuts which fall outside
	<u>Depth</u> limits		Gap settings Advanced settings
			<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

11. Choose Gap settings.

12. Enter the values shown in	Gap settings ? X
the dialog box at right.	<u>n</u> eset
13. Choose OK twice.	C Distance 3.6
	Motion < Gap size, keep tool down
	Smooth
	🔽 Use plunge, retract rate in gap
	Check gap motion for gouge
	Motion > Gap size, retract
	Check retract motion for gouge
	Optimize cut order
	Plunge into previously cut area
Tip: Tangential arcs are useful	Follow containment boundary at gap
in steep and shallow toolpaths	Tangential arc radius: 2.0
where you cut a previously	Tangential arc angle: 45.0
system to blend the entry and	Tangential line length: 0.0
exit moves for each cut	<u>DK</u> <u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp

14. Mastercam detects some corners in the part and displays the following message. (The sharp corner it detects is the ridge along the top of the part.) Since this doesn't affect the toolpath, choose the **Do not show this warning again** check box and choose **Yes**.

Inter	rnal sharp corner test 🛛 🗙		
A sharp comer was found within a single surface. For best results, remodel the surface. Use Analyze/Surfaces/Check model to find any other sharp corners.			
D	Do you wish to ignore this warning and continue?		
Do not show this warning again			

Tip: You can use the	e Advanced settings	button on the Finis	h parallel steep
parameters tab to te	ell Mastercam to ignor	re sharp corners.	

Mastercam generates the toolpath on the steep areas of the part, between 50 and 90 degrees. It should look like the following picture.



Creating the finish shallow toolpath

- 1. Press [Alt + T] to clear the parallel steep toolpath from the screen.
- 2. Choose Finish, Shallow.
- 3. Select the 6 mm HSS ball endmill again.
- 4. Select the **Surface parameters** tab.
- 5. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Surface Finishing

Tool parameters Surface parameters Fi	nish :	shallow parameters	
	•	Clearance 100.0	Tip comp
		Absolute Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	Drive surface/solid Stock to leave 0.0
	₹	Retract 50.0	Select (5 selected)
		Absolute O Incremental Ecod plane 50	Check surface/solid Stock to leave 0.0
		C Absolute Incremental Reprint retract	Sele <u>c</u> t (0 selected)
		Top of stock 0.0	Tool containment Compensate to:
		C Absolute C Incremental	Additional offset
<u>R</u> egen		Direction	Select (0 selected)
			<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 6. Select the **Finish shallow parameters** tab.
- 7. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters	Finish shallow para	meters
Total tolerance 0.025	<u>M</u> ax. stepover	2.5
Machining 0.0	Cutting method	Zigzag
Machining direction	From slope angle	0.0
© ccw © cw	To slope angle	10.0
	Cut extension	0.25
Prompt for starting point		
Expand inside to outside		
	<u>Depth</u> limits.	<u>Colapse</u> <u>G</u> ap settings Advanced settings
		<u> </u>

- 8. Choose Gap settings.
- 9. Enter the values shown in the dialog box at right.
- 10. Choose OK twice.

Gap settings	? ×
	<u>R</u> eset
Gap size	
C Distance	2.5
% of stepover	300.0
– Motion < Gap size, keep tool	down
Smooth	◙ ╋╋┓
🔽 Use plunge, retract rate in	ngap
Check gap motion for gou	ige
Motion > Gap size, retract	
Check retract motion for g	jouge
Optimize cut order Plunge into previously cut Follow containment bound Tangential arc radius: Tangential arc angle: Tangential line length:	area dary at gap 2.5 45.0
<u> </u>	I <u>H</u> elp

Mastercam generates the toolpath on the shallow areas of the part, between 0 and 10 degrees. It should look like the following picture.



11. Save the file in your working folder as **steepandshallow.mc9**.

Exercise 2 – Creating a finish radial toolpath

Finish radial toolpaths can be the most efficient toolpaths for round parts. In this example, the tool zigzags from the center point to the outer edge of the part. The wireframe and surface geometry for the part is shown in the following pictures.



This exercise shows you the following skill:

• Creating a finish radial toolpath

Creating the finish radial toolpath

1. Open the file radial-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.

- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle Drive to A.
- 4. Toggle Contain to N.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

Α
N
N
N

- 5. Choose Finish, Radial.
- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 6 mm HSS ball endmill from the tool library.
- 7. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Finish radial parameters							
	Clearance 100.0 Tip comp Tip T						
	Retract 50.0 Select (55 select) Image: Select	ed)					
	C Absolute C Incremental Compensate to: C Absolute C Incremental Compensate to: C Inside C Center C D Additional offset 0.0	utside					
<u>R</u> egen	<u>Direction</u> Sel <u>e</u> ct (0 selected <u>OK</u>	1) Lelp					

- 9. Select the Finish radial parameters tab.
- 10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.
- 346 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Surface Finishing

Tool parameters Surface parameters Finish radial parameters								
Total tolerance 0.1 Cutting method Zi Starting point Start inside Start outside	025 gzag	Max. angle increment Start angle	0.0	Start offset distance Sweep angle	0.25 360.0			
			Depth limits	<u>G</u> ap setti	ngs Advanced settings Cancel Help			

- 11. Choose OK.
- 12. You are prompted to select a rotation point. This is the pivot point for the toolpath slices. Since the center of this part is X0Y0, press [O] to select the origin.

Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



13. Save the file in your working folder as radial finish.mc9.

Exercise 3 – Creating a finish project toolpath

Finish project toolpaths project either geometry or a toolpath from an earlier operation onto surfaces that you select. This finish toolpath provides free-form motion with the ability to match the cutting motions closely to the shape of the part. It also provides the most tool control. Engraving machining often uses project toolpaths. The part for this exercise is shown in the follomwing picture. The toolpath will project the word "PROJECT" onto the part below it.



Note: For more sophisticated engraving applications, you can purchase Mastercam Engraving, which works with Mastercam Mill.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skill:

• Creating a finish project toolpath

Creating the project toolpath

- 1. Open the file **project-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric**.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.
- 4. Toggle Contain to N.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.


- 5. Choose Finish, Project.
- 6. Select the 1 mm ball endmill from the tool display window.
- 7. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Finish project parameters				
	Clearance 100.0	Tip comp		
	Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	Drive surface/solid		
	✓ Retract 50.0	Select (15 selected)		
	Absolute C Incremental	Check surface/solid Stock to leave 0.0		
	C Absolute Incremental	Select (0 selected)		
	Top of stock 0.0 Absolute O Incremental	Tool containment Compensate to: O Inside O Center O Dutside		
<u>R</u> egen	<u>Directi</u> on	Additional offset U.U Select (0 selected)		
		<u>OK C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp		

- 9. Select the Finish project parameters tab.
- 10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Su	face parameters Fir	nish project parameters
Total <u>t</u> olerance	0.025	Source operations
Projection type-		
O NCI		
Curves		
C Points		
C Blend		
🗖 Add depths		
Max. stepover:	1.25	
Cut method:	Zigzag 🔽	
Across	C Along	
C 2D	🖸 3D	Depth limits Gap settings Advanced settings
		<u> </u>

Note: If you had previously created other toolpaths, you could select a toolpath to project in the Source operations list area.

- 11. Choose OK.
- 12. Chain each section of the word "PROJECT" beginning with the outside boundary of the "P." Continue selecting the chains in the order shown in the following picture.



13. Choose **Done**. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



14. Save the file in your working folder as finish project.mc9.

Exercise 4 – Creating a finish contour toolpath

Finish contour works well for the following part because the part includes several steep walls. The finish contour toolpath allows the tool to step down gradually in the Z axis instead of stepping over in the X and Y axes. The following pictures show the wireframe and surface geometry for the part you will use.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating a finish contour toolpath
- Automatically detecting flats

Creating the finish contour toolpath

- 1. Open the file **finish contour-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric**.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.
- 4. Toggle Contain to N.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.



- 5. Choose Finish, Contour.
- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 16 mm HSS bullnose endmill with 3 mm radius from the tool library.
- 7. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Surface Finishing

Tool parameters Surface parameters Fi	inish contour parameters	
Tool parameters Surface parameters Fi	Image: Clearance 100.0 Absolute Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 50.0 Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 5.0 Absolute Incremental Retract 5.0 Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 5.0 Absolute Incremental Rapid retract D0	Tip comp Tip Image: Complex content of the surface/solid Drive surface/solid 0.0 Stock to leave 0.0 Select (22 selected) Check surface/solid 0.0 Stock to leave 0.0 Stock to leave 0.0 Stock to leave 0.0 Select (0 selected) Tool containment Compensate to:
Regen	Absolute C Incremental	Componisate to: Inside Center Additional offset 0.0 Select (0 selected)

9. Select the Finish contour parameters tab.

10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Fini	sh contour parameters
Total tolerance 0.025 Maximum stepdown: 1.0 Corner rounding radius: 2.0	Direction of closed contours Direction of open contours Climb C Conventional Start length: 0.0 Transition
Entry/exit arc Radius: 5.0 Sweep: 90.0 Allow arc outside boundary	C High speed C Broken Image: Ramp C Follow surface Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Loop length: Image: Ramp Image: Ramp Image: Ramp
Prompt for starting point Optimize cut order Order cuts bottom to top	Helix Shellow Cut depths Gap settings Advanced settings
	<u>Q</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Note: The ramp length determines the size of the ramp between the constant Z depth cuts. This provides smooth motion between depth cuts, allowing for higher feed rates.

- 11. Choose Cut depths.
- 12. Choose **Detect flats** in the Incremental section. Mastercam automatically detects the flats shown in the following picture. When it creates the toolpath, it will create a cutting pass at this depth.



If you click on the list of depths, you can see the depth of the flats that it detected.



13. Make sure your other selections match the following dialog box.

Cut Depths	? ×
C Absolute	Incremental
Absolute depths	Incremental depths
Minimum depth 0.0	Adjustment to top cut 0.2
Maximum depth	0 Adjustment to other cuts 0.2
Detect flats Select depths	Detect flats Critical depths
C <u>lear d</u> epths	
Adjust for stock, to leave on driv	e surfaces (Note: drive stock is included in adjustment.)
Relative to	<u>O</u> K <u>Cancel</u> <u>Help</u>

- 14. Choose OK.
- 15. Choose Gap settings.
- 16. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Ga	p settings	? ×
		Reset
	Retract if stepover or stepdo	own is greater than:
	C Distance	0.15
	% of max. stepdown	300.0
	Use plunge and retract i	ates in transition motion
	🔽 Check transition motion	for gouge
	🔽 Check retract motion for	gouge
	<u> </u>	el <u>H</u> elp

- 17. Choose OK.
- 18. Choose Advanced settings.
- 19. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tip: Setting the tool to roll over all surface edges results in better vertical wall recognition. Only the edge of a vertical wall is seen as an edge from the top, so this setting may be necessary in order for the vertical wall to be cut.

dvanced settings	?
	<u>R</u> eset
- At surface (solid face) edge, ro C Automatically (based on ge	ll tool:
 Only between surfaces (so Over all edges 	id faces)
- Sharp corner tolerance (at surf	ace/face edge)
C Distance	0.001
	100.0
🔲 Skip hidden face test for so	olid bodies
Check for internal sharp co	rner
	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

20. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



The following closeup shows the constant Z moves in greater detail.



21. Save the part in your working folder as **finish contour 1.mc9**.

Exercise 5 – Creating a contour shallow toolpath

The finish contour toolpath that you created in the previous exercise has an option that gives you more control of the tool motion in shallow areas of a part. You can use this toolpath to reduce or increase the number of cuts in these areas. The cuts added to the shallow area can be partial or complete. A partial cut would cause tool motion to be added in only the shallow areas while a complete cut would cause tool motion to be added in shallow areas and possibly some steeper areas. The following pictures show the wireframe and surface geometry for the part you will use.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 357

In this exercise, you will learn the following skill:

• Optimizing a finish contour toolpath for a shallow part

Creating the contour shallow toolpath

- 1. Open the file **add cuts-mm.mc9** from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorial\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.
- 4. Toggle Contain to N.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.



- 5. Choose Finish, Contour.
- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 18 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 7. Select the Surface parameters tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Surface Finishing

Tool parameters Surface parameters F	nish contour parameters	
	Clearance 100.0 Tip comp Tip ▼	
	Absolute C Incremental Drive surface/solid Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	
	Retract 50.0 Select (11 selected)	
	Absolute Incremental Feed plane 5.0 C Absolute Incremental C Absolute Incremental	
	Hapid retract Top.of.stock 0.0 Absolute O Incremental Additional offset 0.0	ide
<u>R</u> egen	Direction Select (0 selected)	
	<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	P

9. Select the **Finish contour parameters** tab.

10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Finit	sh contour parameters
Total tolerance 0.025 Maximum stepdown: 1.5 Corner rounding radius: 2.0	Direction of closed contours Direction of open contours Climb Conventional Start length: 100 Conventional
Entry/exit arc Radius: Sweep: 90.0 Allow arc outside boundary	High speed Broken Ramp Follow surface Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed structure Image: Speed stru
Prompt for starting point Optimize cut order Order cuts bottom to top	Heix Cut depths Gap settings Advanced settings OK Cancel Help

- 11. Choose the Shallow check box and button.
- 12. Enter the values shown in the following dialog box.

Tip: The Minimum stepdown value adds more cuts in shallow areas by stepping down the minimum amount.

Contour Shallow	? ×		
C Remove cuts from shallow a	reas		
Add cuts to shallow areas			
Minimum stepdown:	0.25		
Limiting angle:	45.0		
Limiting stepover:	1.5		
Allow partial cuts			
<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp		

13. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



- 14. Save the file in your working folder as **finish contour shallow.mc9**.
- 360 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Exercise 6 – Creating a finish scallop toolpath

For the part in this exercise, finish scallop creates a consistent scallop height over the whole part regardless of whether the surface becomes steep or shallow. Mastercam creates the consistent scallop height without having to double the step size in the steep areas. The following pictures show the wireframe and surface geometry for the part you will use.



For this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating a finish scallop toolpath
- Using the collapse resolution to fine-tune the toolpath

Creating the finish scallop toolpath

- 1. Open the file scallop-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.
- 4. Toggle Contain to N.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

<u>D</u> rive	Α
C <u>A</u> D file	N
<u>C</u> heck	N
Con <u>t</u> ain	N

5. Choose Finish, Scallop.

- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 6 mm HSS ball endmill from the tool library.
- 7. Select the **Surface parameters** tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters	Finish	scallop parameters	
	N	Clearance 100.0	Tip comp
		Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	Drive surface/solid Stock to leave 0.0
	•	Retract 50.0	Select (80 selected)
		Absolute C Incremental	Check surface/solid
	-	Eeed plane 5.0	
		C Absolute Incremental	(U selected)
			- Tool containment
		<u>Top of</u> stock 0.0	Compensate to: Conside Conter Conutside
		Absolute O Incremental	Additional offset 0.0
<u>R</u> egen		Direction	Select (0 selected)
			<u>OK C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 9. Select the Finish scallop parameters tab.
- 10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface paramet	s Finish scallop parameters
Total tolerance 0.025	Max. stepover 2.0 Bias angle 0.0
Machining direction	Prompt for starting point
O CW	Expand inside to outside
	☐ Order cuts by minimum distance
	Depth limits Collapse Gap settings Advanced settings
	<u>Q</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 11. Choose Collapse.
- 12. Enter the values shown in the following dialog box.

Collapse settings	? ×
Collapse resolution	
☑ Override automatic resolution calculat	ion
% of stepover 66.0	
Create limiting zone boundaries as geom	etry
<u>OK</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp	>

Tip: The collapse resolution defines how smoothly the collapse zones of the 3D collapse toolpath are created. The system uses the stepover percentage to create a "mesh" over the surfaces that determines where the toolpath is placed. A smaller collapse resolution creates a tighter mesh and a more accurate toolpath, but it also takes longer to generate and makes a longer NC program.

13. Choose OK.

14. Choose Gap settings	14.	Choose	Gap	settings
-------------------------	-----	--------	-----	----------

15. Enter the values shown in the dialog box at right.

	<u>R</u> eset
Gap size	
🔿 Distance	0.15
% of stepover	300.0
Motion < Gap size, keep tool	down
Smooth	· ·
Use plunge, retract rate i	
Check gap motion for go	
	-
Motion > Gap size, retract	
Check retract motion for	gouge
Optimize cut order Plunge into previously cu Follow tool center bound	it area ary at gap
Tangential arc radius:	0.0
Tangential arc angle:	0.0
Tangential line length:	0.0
<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ance	el <u>H</u> elp

? ×

16. Choose **OK** twice. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.

Gap settings



17. Save the part in your working folder as finish scallop.mc9.

Exercise 7 – Creating a finish flowline toolpath

Finish flowline toolpaths follow the shape and direction of the surfaces and create a smooth and flowing toolpath motion. A finish parallel toolpath machines the part at a set angle and does not flow with the surfaces, resulting in a lot of air cutting. The following pictures show the wireframe and surface geometry for the part you will use.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skill:

• Creating a finish flowline toolpath

Creating the flowline toolpath

- 1. Open the file **flowline-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric**.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Surface.
- 3. Toggle the **Drive** setting to **A**.
- 4. Toggle Contain to N.

Your surface selection menu options should match the following picture.

<u>D</u> rive	Α
C <u>A</u> D file	N
<u>C</u> heck	N
Con <u>t</u> ain	N

5. Choose Finish, Flowline.

- 6. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 5 mm HSS ball endmill from the tool library.
- 7. Select the **Surface parameters** tab.
- 8. Enter the values as shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Fi	nish flowline parameters
Regen	Clearance 100.0 Tip comp Tip Absolute Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 50.0 Absolute Incremental Eeed plane 50 Absolute Incremental Feed plane 50 Absolute Incremental Feed plane 50 Absolute Incremental Absolute Incremental Absolute Incremental Mapping of stock 0.0 Direction Check surface/solid Stock to leave 0.0 Selegt (0 selected)
	<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 9. Select the Finish flowline parameters tab.
- 10. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Surface parameters Fi	nish flowline parameters	
Cut control ☐ Distance 2.0 ☐ Total tolerance 0.025 ☑ Check flowline motion for gouge	Stepover control	Cutting method Zigzag
	Depth limits	<u>G</u> ap settings Advanc <u>e</u> d settings <u>K</u> <u>K</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 11. Choose OK.
- 12. You will return to the graphics window, with the Flowline menu displayed. Use the options on the menu to orient the cutting motion. Toggle the **Cut dir** setting so that the flow lines and starting arrows look like the following picture.



13. Choose **Done**. Mastercam generates the toolpath as shown in the following picture.



368 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

14. Save the file in your working folder as **finish flowline.mc9**.

In this chapter and the previous chapters, you have seen how Mastercam's surface machining toolpaths give you many options for tailoring toolpaths to your part geometry. The next chapter will show you how Mastercam can use the multiaxis capabilities of your machine tool to produce even more sophisticated surfacing toolpaths.

16 *Creating Multiaxis Toolpaths*

A multiaxis toolpath can be a 3-, 4-, or 5-axis toolpath. With a 3-axis toolpath, you can machine a part on one side, turn it over, and machine the other side. With a 5-axis toolpath, you can machine a part without having to turn the part over manually. This chapter introduces you to two different types of multiaxis toolpaths: a curve 5-axis toolpath and a swarf 5-axis toolpath.

Exercise 1 – Creating a curve 5-axis toolpath

This exercise shows you how to use 3D curves as an option in a 5-axis toolpath. This toolpath is useful for a part with curved surfaces because it allows for precise tool tip control. The part in this example, a blade and root part, has curved surfaces. Unlike the 3-axis contour toolpath, the curve 5-axis toolpath allows for more precise contact between the tool and the surface material.

The following pictures show wireframe and shaded views of the part.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating a curve 5-axis toolpath with 3-axis output
- Creating a curve 5-axis toolpath with 5-axis output
- Creating the toolpath with 3-axis output
 - 1. Open curved blade-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
 - 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Multiaxis, Curve5ax.
 - 3. Choose Output Format 3 Axis.
 - 4. Choose the **3D Curves** button.
 - 5. Choose **Single** from the menu.
 - 6. Select the top edge of the rib as shown in the following picture.



- 7. Choose **Done** to return to the Curve 5-axis dialog box.
- 8. Choose the **Comp to Surfaces** button.
- 9. Select the blade surface as shown in the following picture and choose **Done**.

372 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



10. Make sure your other values match the following dialog box and choose **OK**.

Output Format		
• <u>3 Axis</u> C <u>4 Axis</u>	<u> </u>	
Curve Type	Tool Axis Control	Tip Control
3 <u>D</u> Curves	C Lines	${f C}$ On Selected Cur <u>v</u> e
	Surface	On Projected Curve
	C <u>P</u> lane	Comp To Surfaces
	C Erom Point	Projection
C Surface Edge	C Io Point	<u>N</u> ormal to Plane
⊙ <u>A</u> ll	C Chain	Maximum
C <u>O</u> ne		Distance 1.0
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	<u>o</u> k	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 11. You are prompted to select a tool axis surface. Select the blade surface again as shown in step 9 and choose **Done**.
- 12. Right-click in the tool display area and choose the 10 mm HSS bullnose endmill with 3 mm radius from the tool library.
- 13. Select the Multiaxis parameters tab.

Tool parameters Multiaxis parameters	Curve5ax Parameters	1
	Clearance 100.0	Compensation Computer
	C Absolute Incremental Use clearance only at the	Compensation Left 🔽 付
	start and end of operation	Tip comp
	Retract 10.0 Absolute Incremental	Stock to leave 0.0 on drive surfaces
	Eeed plane 5.0 C Absolute C Incremental	Stock to leave on check surfaces
<u>4</u> tr	axis Fiter	<u>Entry/Exit</u>
		<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

14. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

15. Select the Curv5ax Parameters tab.

16. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Multiaxis parameters Curve	e5ax Parameters
Tool Control Offset © Left © None © Right Radial offset 5.0 Vector depth 0.0	Curve Following Method Step increment 1.0 Chord height 0.02 Maximum step 2.0 Gouge Processing Frotect Christian 100
Side tilt angle 0.0	Show toolpath before gouge check Minimize corners in toolpath
	<u>G</u> ap settings
	<u> </u>

17. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture.



Adding entry/exit moves

The toolpath for the blade and root part is gouging the material upon entry. You can fix this by adding parameters for a smooth entry and exit.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the toolpath.
- 3. Choose the Multiaxis parameters tab.
- 4. Choose the Entry/Exit check box and button.
- 5. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Entry/Exit	?×
Entry Approach height 0.0	Exit Retract height
F Entry Curve	Exit Curve
Length 25.0	Length 25.0
Thickness 12.0	Thickness 12.0
Height 20.0	<- Height 20.0
Direction 💿 Left 🔿 Right	Direction 💿 Left 🔿 Right
Pivot angle 30.0	Pivot angle 30.0
Curve tolerance	0.025
Display	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 6. Choose OK twice.
- 7. Choose **Regen Path**. The updated toolpath should look like the following picture.

376 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



Note: This picture has been rotated with the Gview–Dynamic function to show the entry/exit moves more clearly.

Changing the toolpath to 5-axis output

Unlike the 3-axis toolpath you just created, the 5-axis toolpath lets the entire surface of the part control the orientation of the tool. Also, by setting a lead/lag angle for the tool, the tool can lean forward or backward for more effective cleanout.

- 1. If necessary, press [Alt + O] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the Geometry icon for the toolpath.
- 3. Change the Output Format to 5 Axis and choose OK.

Curve 5-axis		? ×
Output Format	s (• <u>5 Axis</u>	
Curve Type 3D Curves Surface Edge All Dne	Tool Axis Control C Lines © Surface C Plane C Erom Point C Io Point C Date	Tip Control C On Selected Curve On Projected Curve Comp To Surfaces Projection Normal to Plane Normal to Surface Maximum Distance
·	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 4. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the toolpath.
- 5. Choose the Curve5ax Parameters tab.
- 6. Enter a Lead/lag angle of 10.

Tool parameters Multiaxis parameters Curve5a	ax Parameters
Tool Control Offset I Left I None I Right Radial offset 5.0	Curve Following Method C Step increment C Chord height 0.02 Maximum step 2.0 2
Vector depth 0.0	Gouge Processing © Protect
Lead/lag angle 10.0	C Detect C Look Ahead
Side tilt angle 0.0	Show toolpath before gouge check Minimize corners in toolpath
Tool vector length 25.0	<u>G</u> ap settings
	<u> </u>

- 7. Choose OK.
- 8. Choose **Regen Path** to regenerate the toolpath. It should look like the following picture.



- 9. Choose **OK** to close the Operations Manager.
- 10. Save the file in your working folder as **5ax blade.mc9**.

Exercise 2 – Creating a swarf 5-axis toolpath

The swarf 5-axis toolpath uses the side of a tool to remove material from a pocket with tilted walls. The following pictures show the part in shaded and wireframe views.



In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Creating a swarf 5-axis toolpath.
- Selecting geometry for tool tip control.
- Using the fan distance to control tool movement around the corners.

Selecting the surfaces for the toolpath

- 1. Open the file **swarf pocket-mm.mc9** from the folder **C:\Mcam9\Tutorial\Mill Tutorial\Metric**.
- 2. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Multiaxis, Swarf5ax.
- 3. Choose the **Surfaces** button in the **Walls** section. The dialog box closes so you can select the surfaces.
- 4. Select each of the four walls. Make sure you do not choose the floor.
- 5. Choose Done.
- 6. Mastercam prompts you to choose which surface will be machined first. Select at position 1.



7. Mastercam prompts you to identify the lower rail of the surface. Drag the mouse down until the arrow rests on the lower edge of the surface as shown in the following picture and click.

380 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial



- 8. Choose Flip from the menu. The arrow should point left.
- 9. Choose **OK**. The **Swarf 5-axis** dialog box reopens. It should look like the following picture.

Swarf 5-axis		? ×
Output Format	• <u>5</u> Axis	
Walls © <u>S</u> urfaces © Chai <u>n</u> s	Tool Axis Control Fanning Fan <u>Di</u> stance	Tip Control Plane Surfaces Lower Rail Distance above lower 0.0
	<u></u> K	<u>Cancel</u> <u>H</u> elp

10. Choose OK.

Selecting the tool and toolpath parameters

1. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 12 mm bullnose endmill with the 1 mm corner radius from the tool library.

- 2. Select the Multiaxis parameters tab.
- 3. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Multiaxis parameters Swarf5ax Parameters	
Clearance 100.0	Compensation Computer
Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	direction:
C Absolute C Incremental	Stock to leave 0.0 on drive surfaces
Eeed plane 5.0 C Absolute C Incremental Rapid retract	Stock to leave on check surfaces
<u>4th axis</u> F <u>ilter</u> F	Entry/Exit
	<u> </u>

- 4. Choose the Entry/Exit check box and button.
- 5. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Entry/Exit	? ×
Entry C Approach height	Exit F Retract height 0.0
Entry Curve	🔽 Exit Curve
Length 25.0	[→] Length 25.0
Thickness 10.0	Thickness 10.0
Height 20.0	<- Height 20.0
Direction 💿 Left 🔿 Right	Direction 💽 Left C Right
Pivot angle 30.0	Pivot angle 30.0
	0.025
Lurve tolerance	10.023
<u>D</u> isplay	<u>QK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 6. Choose OK.
- 382 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

- 7. Choose the Swarf5ax Parameters tab.
- 8. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Tool parameters Multiaxis parameters Swarf	5ax Parameters
Wall Passes	Wall Following Method
Number of Passes 1	Step Increment 1.0 C Chord Height 0.02 Maximum Step 2.0
Stepover 1.0	
Stock to Leave on Walls 0.0	Floor Gouge Processing
	Protect Infinite Look Ahead
Floor Passes	C Detect C Look Ahead 100
Number of Passes	Show Toolpath Before Gouge Check
Step 1.0	Minimize Corners in Toolpath
	Fanning Feedrate 25.0
Fetract Between Passes	Tool Vector Length 25.0
	<u>QK</u> <u>Cancel</u> Help

9. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the toolpath, which should look like the following picture.



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 383

Backplotting the toolpath

To get a better idea of how the side of the tool is cutting the sides of the pocket, backplot the toolpath.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose Backplot.
- 3. Choose Display.
- 4. Choose the Appearance tab.
- 5. Choose the **Tool Shaded** option as shown in the following picture.

kplot display
eneral Appearance Stop
Tool Image: Show tool Image: Color: 15 Image: Color: Image: Color:
Show coordinates Verbose mode
Holder Show holder © Color: 12 C Material: Emerald
Motion
Show toolpath
Color loop Start color 11
Rapid 14 🗾 🖭 CW Arc feed 11 📃 🖭
Linear feed 11 💽 🖭 CCW Arc feed 11 💽
<u> </u>

- 6. Choose OK.
- 7. Press [R] to preview the toolpath. You should see the tool angle around the pocket like in the following picture.


Adjusting the tool tip control

In the previous example, the tool tip control parameter was set to the lower rail, which is the line where the wall meets the floor. However, because the tool is at an angle, the tool will wind up gouging the floor, as shown in the following picture.



By setting the tool tip control to be the entire floor, Mastercam can prevent this.

- 1. If necessary, press [Esc] to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the Geometry icon for the toolpath.

3. Choose the **Surfaces** button under Tip Control. The dialog box closes temporarily so you can choose a surface.

Swarf 5-axis Output Format C 4 Axis	© 5Axis	? ×
Walls © Surfaces C Chains	Tool Axis Control Fanning Fan Distance	Tip Control Plane © Surfaces © Lower Hall Distance above lower 0.0
	<u> </u>	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

4. Choose the floor of the pocket as shown in the following picture.



- 5. Choose Done.
- 6. Choose **OK** when the dialog box displays.
- 7. Choose Regen Path.
- 8. Choose Backplot.



9. Choose the **Gview–Side** button from the toolbar and press [Page Up] several times to zoom in on the part, so you can see the tool approach the bottom.

10. Press [S] repeatedly to step through the toolpath. It should look like the following picture. Because the tool tip control is set to the entire bottom surface, not just the line, the tool tip never gouges the part.



Optimizing the corner transition

In the current toolpath, as the the tool is moving along the walls, it is continually transitioning between the corner angles:



Mastercam has a fanning capability that you can use to specify a transition area. This way, the tool will be perpendicular to the floor while machining the walls. The tool only transitions to the corner angle when it reaches the fanning area.

- 1. Choose Backup to return to the Operations Manager.
- 2. Choose the Geometry icon for the toolpath.
- 3. Select Fanning.
- 4. Enter a Fan Distance of 12 as shown in the following picture.

Output Format C 4 Axis	© 5 Axis	
Walls © Surfaces C Chains	Tool Axis Control Fanning Fan Distance 12.0	Tip Control
	<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 5. Choose OK.
- 6. Choose **Regen Path**. As the toolpath machines the walls, it should look like the following picture.



7. Save the file in your working folder as swarf.mc9

³⁸⁸ Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

This exercise completes your introduction to creating multiaxis toolpaths in Mastercam. You can learn about Mastercam's other types of multiaxis toolpaths—drill, multisurface, flowline, and rotary—in the online help. The next chapter, which is the final exercise in this tutorial, shows you an example of machining a solid and introduces Mastercam's feature-based solid drilling function.

Note: You need a Mastercam Solids license to complete the next chapter.

17 Machining Solids

This chapter introduces you to machining solid geometry. Solids are another type of Mastercam entity, like surfaces, lines, or arcs. You can either create them in Mastercam or import them from another program. This chapter does not show you how to create solids; see the *Mastercam Solids Tutorial* which came with your purchase of Mastercam Solids or the online help for more information about creating solid geometry.

The part you will machine in this chapter is a gearbox. The following pictures show wireframe and shaded views of the geometry. You will perform the following operations:

- pocket out the central cavity
- drill and tap the twelve 12 mm blind holes around the top edge
- drill the other holes



Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial 391



You will create a pocket toolpath to machine the cavity and use the Solid Drilling function to drill the holes.

Note: You need a Mastercam Solids license to complete the exercises in this chapter.

Exercise 1 – Machining the pocket

In this exercise, you will create roughing and finishing operations to machine the central cavity of the part. You will use the same type of pocket toolpath as you would for wireframe geometry, but apply it to the solid model.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Selecting solid geometry
- Creating a pocket toolpath using solids
- Creating separate roughing and finishing operations

Selecting the solids and the pocketing parameters

- 1. Open the file gearbox-mm.mc9 from the folder C:\Mcam9\Tutorials\Mill Tutorial\Metric.
- 2. Press [Alt + S] to view the part as a shaded solid.
- 3. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Pocket, Solids.

4. Toggle the menu options so that they match the following picture.

Tip: A chain for a solids toolpath is built from the edges of the solid faces. You can select a face to include all the edges around it, or you can select edges one at a time. Since solid models can be very complicated, use the menu options shown in the following picture to help you choose the proper geometry for your toolpath.

FromBack

Toggle this to **Y** to select faces or edges that are hidden or on the back of the model, so you don't have to rotate the part.

Edges

When set to \mathbf{Y} , allows you to select edges. Set this to \mathbf{N} if you only want to select faces.

Faces

When set to \mathbf{Y} , allows you to select faces. Set this to \mathbf{N} if you only want to select edges.



5. Select the floor of the pocket as shown in the following picture.



6. Choose Done twice.

- 7. Right-click in the tool display area and select the 32 mm HSS flat endmill from the tool library.
- 8. Choose the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 9. Enter 165 for Retract.
- 10. Choose the **Incremental** option for **Depth**. The Depth should change to 0.0.
- 11. Enter 145 for Top of stock.
- 12. Enter 1.0 for both XY stock to leave and Z stock to leave.
- 13. Choose the Create additional finish operation check box.
- 14. Choose the **Depth cuts** check box and button.
- 15. Select Keep tool down.
- 16. Make sure your other values match the following picture and choose **OK**.

Depth cuts		?)
Max rough step # Finish cuts	Depth cut order	lepth
Finish step		
 Keep tool down Use island depth 	Guter wall taper angle	3.0
C Absolute	Island taper angle	3.0
	<u>D</u> K <u>C</u> ancel	<u>H</u> elp

17. Verify that your other pocketing parameters match the following picture.

394 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Tool parameters Pocketing parameters Roughing/Finishing parameters	
Clearance 100.0	Machining direction Climb C Conventional
Use clearance only at the start and end of operation	Tip comp Tip 💌
Retr <u>a</u> ct 165.0	Roll cutter None 💌
Absolute C Incremental	Linearization 0.001
C Absolute © Incremental	XY stock to leave 1.0
	Z stock to leave 1.0
Lop of stock 143.0 C Absolute C Incremental Depth 0.0	Create additional finish operation
C Absolute © Incremental	
Pocket type: Standard	Depth cuts
Hading	Ad <u>r</u> anced
	<u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

Selecting roughing and finishing parameters

- 1. Choose the Roughing/Finishing parameters tab.
- 2. Choose the Constant Overlap Spiral cutting method.
- 3. Clear the **Finish** check box.
- 4. Choose the **Entry ramp** (or **Entry helix**) check box and button.
- 5. Choose the **Ramp** tab.
- 6. Enter the values shown on the following dialog box.

Helix/Ramp Parameters	100	CDirection
Minimum length: 100.0 % Maximum length: 100.0 % Z clearance: XY clearance: Plunge zig angle: Plunge zag angle: [] Auto angle	18.0 32.0 1.0 1.0 3.0 3.0	COW COW If ramp fails Plunge Skip Save skipped boundary Entry feed rate Plunge rate Feed rate
XY angle: Additional slot width: ☐ Align ramp with entry point	0.0	Ramp from entry point <u>OK</u> <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 7. Choose OK.
- 8. Verify that your Roughing/Finishing parameters match the following picture and choose **OK**.

🔽 Rough	Cutting method: Constant Overlap Spiral
Zigzag Constant Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way Clean Corners
•	•
Stepover percentage 75.0	Minimize tool burial Image: Second
Stepover distance 24.0	Spiral inside to outside
Roughing angle	
I Finish	
No. of passes	Finish pass spacing 0.25
No. of passes 1 Finish outer boundary	Finish pass spacing 0.25 Cutter compensation computer
Finish No. of passes T Finish outer boundary Start finish pass at closest entity	Finish pass spacing 0.25 Cutter compensation computer Image: Optimize cutter comp in control
	Finish pass spacing 0.25 Cutter compensation computer Optimize cutter comp in control Machine finish passes only at final depth
Finish No. of passes T Finish outer boundary Start finish pass at closest entity Keep tool down	Finish pass spacing 0.25 Cutter compensation computer Optimize cutter comp in control Machine finish passes only at final depth Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets Lead in/out
	Finish pass spacing 0.25 Cutter compensation computer Optimize cutter comp in control Machine finish passes only at final depth Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets

Mastercam generates the toolpath.



9. Choose the **Repaint** button from the toolbar to see the toolpath more clearly. It should look like the following picture.



10. Press [Alt + T] to clear the toolpath display.

Editing the parameters for the finish operation

Since you told Mastercam to create a separate operation for the finish pass, you can edit its parameters. In this procedure, you will define the lead in/out moves.

- 1. Press [Alt + O] to open the Operations Manager. You can see two pocket operations.
- 2. Choose the **Parameters** icon for the second operation.
- 3. Choose the Lead in/out check box and button.
- 4. Enter 10 for Overlap.
- 5. Enter an Entry–Line Length of 0.
- 6. Enter an Entry–Arc Radius of 50%.
- 7. Copy the values to the **Exit** section. Your values should match the following picture.

Lead In/Out	?	×
	Overlap: 10.0	
✓ Entry └ine ○ ● Perpendicular ● Length: 0.0 2 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 2 16.0 Arc Radius: 50.0 2 16.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use entry point Use point depth © Enter on first depth cut only	Exit Line C Perpendicular C Tangent Length: 0.0 % 0.0 Ramp height: 0.0 Arc Radius: 50.0 % 16.0 Sweep: 90.0 Helix height: 0.0 Use exit point Use point depth Exit on last depth cut only	
		1

- 8. Choose OK.
- 398 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

9. Verify that your Roughing/Finishing parameters match the following picture.

ool parameters Pocketing parameters	Roughing/Finishing parameters
Rough	Cutting method: Constant Overlap Spiral
Zigzag Constant Overlap Spiral	Parallel Spiral Parallel Spiral, Morph Spiral High Speed One Way
Stepover percentage 75.0	Minimize tool burial
Stepover distance 24.0	Spiral inside to outside
Roughing angle	
Finish	Finish pass spacing 0.25
Finish outer boundary	Cutter compensation
☐ Start finish pass at closest entity ☐ Keep tool down	Optimize cutter comp in control Machine finish passes only at final depth
	Machine finish passes after roughing all pockets
	<u> </u>

- 10. Choose the **Pocketing parameters** tab.
- 11. Enter 0 for the Z stock to leave.
- 12. Choose OK.
- 13. Choose **Regen Path**. Mastercam regenerates the toolpath with the new lead in/out moves for the finish pass.

Renaming the operations

Since you will be creating many operations to machine this part, you should start naming the operations and groups to keep them organized.

1. Click on Operation 2 and type in the name **Finish** as shown in the following picture.



- 2. Press [Enter] to set the name.
- 3. Click twice on operation 1, type the name **Rough**, and press [Enter].
- 4. Right-click on **Toolpath Group 1** and choose **Groups, Rename operation group**.
- 5. Enter the name **Pocket chamber**. Your operations list should look like the following picture.



- 6. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.
- 7. Choose **Main Menu, File, Save** and save the file in your working folder as **gearbox1.mc9**.

400 Mastercam Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial

Exercise 2 – Drilling the holes

Mastercam's Solid Drilling function incorporates feature-recognition technology to automatically find all the holes in your solids and create complete drilling operations for them. It is similar to the Auto Drilling function that you used in Chapter 8. First, you will drill and tap the 12 mm holes on the top edge of the part. Then, you will drill the remaining holes which are located on different faces of the part.

In this exercise, you will learn the following skills:

- Using Solid Drilling to create drilling, tapping, chamfering, pre-drilling, and spot drilling operations
- Drilling holes in different views

Drilling and tapping the top holes

The first set of drilling operations will be on the twelve 12 mm holes on the top edge of the part. These need to be drilled and tapped. You will also create separate operations for spot drilling and chamfering.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Toolpaths, Next menu, Solid drill.
- 2. Choose the **Advanced** radio button. Mastercam automatically finds all the arcs in the solid.
- You can see that the 12 mm holes are the smallest ones in the list. To quickly screen out the other holes, enter 12 in the Maximum diameter field and press [Enter]. Your dialog box should look like the following picture.

olid Drilling Solid Feature Detection		ers Depths G	aroun and Lib	rary Custom I	Yill Parameters Pre-drilling
Basic or Advanced Basic - display 12 holes detected ir 12. 1 12. 1	parameters basic options dia 145. 145. 145. 145. 145. 145. 145. 145.	Z end 100.	vanced	ielect	Hole detection parameters Minimum diameter 0.0 Maximum diameter 12.0 Maximum diameter 12.0 Include blind holes Include 'split' holes Limit search to Tool Plane Re-detect on regeneration Sweep angle Ingnore Minimum Maximum Angle 270.0 Step 0.01
All holes remaining in by selecting and pre option.	n the list will be p ssing the [Delete	rocessed. Dele e] key or the righ	ete any unwai ht mouse "De	nted holes lete''	Detect holes in solid Dependent operations list

- 4. Choose the Tool Parameters tab.
- 5. Select a Finish tool type of Tap RH Fine.
- 6. Select Generate spot drilling operation.
- 7. Enter a **Default spot drill diameter** of **25**.
- 8. Select Make separate operation in the Chamfering with spot drill section.
- 9. Enter a **Chamfer size** of **1**. Your other values should match the following picture.

Machining Solids

olid Drilling Solid Feature Detection Tool Parameters Depth	ns, Group and Library Custom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling
Parameters Finish tool type Tap RH Fine Create arcs on selected points 0.0 ✓ Suppress 'Accept closest matching tool' prompts Spot drilling operation ✓ ✓ Generate spot drilling operation Maximum tool depth 0.0 Default spot drill diameter 25.0 Select default spot drill	Chamfering with the spot drill None Add depth to spot drilling operation Make separate operation Chamfer size 1.0 Comment Home pos Hef point Misc. yalues Rotary axis T/C plane Change NCl
	<u> </u>

- 10. Choose the Depths, Group and Library tab.
- 11. Mastercam will create a separate toolpath group for the drilling operations for this group of holes. Enter the name **12 mm holes drill & tap** in the **Drill group and type** field.
- 12. Choose No sorting or grouping.
- 13. Select the **Tip comp** check box to turn on tip compensation for the drills. Your values should match the following picture.

Solid Drilling Solid Feature Detection Tool Param	eters Depths, Group and Library C Clearance 20.0 C Absolute C Incremental Use clearance only at the start and end of operation Retract 10.0 C Absolute C Incremental Iop of stock 0.0 C Absolute C Incremental Depth 0.0	2 ustom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling Drill group and type 12 mm holes drill & tap 12 mm holes drill & tap 3 axis Use arc views No sorting or grouping Sort by view Group by view 5 axis
		<u>ū</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 14. Choose the **Pre-drilling** tab.
- 15. Choose Generate pre-drill operations.
- 16. Enter 6 for Minimum pre-drill diameter.
- 17. Enter **3** for **Pre-drill diameter increment**. Your values should match the following dialog box.

Solid Drilling				? ×
Solid Feature Detection Tool Parameters	Depths, Group and Libra	ry Custom Drill Parameters	Pre-drilling	
Pre-Drill operations				
Generate pre-drill operations				
Minimum pre-drill diameter	6.0			
Pre-drill diameter increment	3.0			
Stock per side remaining for finish too	0.0			
☑ <u>I</u> ip comp				
		<u>0</u> K	<u>C</u> ancel	Help

18. Choose **OK**. Mastercam generates the drill toolpaths as shown in the following picture.



Using the Solids Manager to look at operations

You can use the Solids Manager to help organize your solid machining operations. Machining operations involving solids are fully associative just like wireframe operations, so changes that you make in the Solids Manager are automatically recognized by the machining operations.

- 1. Choose Main Menu, Solids, Solids mgr.
- 2. Scroll down to the bottom of the solid operations list. You will see the toolpaths that you have created listed there.



- 3. Right-click in the window and choose **Operations Manager** from the menu.
- 4. Press [E] to collapse the list of operations so you can see them more clearly. It should look like the following picture.



Tip: Press [E] several more times to collapse and expand the operations list one level at a time.

Drilling the remaining holes

You will use the Solid Drilling function again to create drilling operations for the remaining holes. Solid Drilling automatically recognizes that the remaining holes are different sizes and are located on different faces of the part, and so need to be drilled from different angles.

- 1. Right-click in the Operations Manager and choose **Toolpaths**, **Solids**, **Drilling**.
- 2. Choose Advanced. Mastercam reads all the arcs in the solid.

Mastercam lists a number of arcs that you do not want to include in this operation, so you will filter them out by their diameter.

- 3. Type in a **Minimum diameter** of **13**. The holes smaller than this were drilled and tapped in the previous procedure, so you don't want to include them here.
- 4. Type in a **Maximum diameter** of **20** and press [Enter]. The arcs larger than this are in the contour of the pocket, not drilling holes, so you don't want to include them either.

Your selections should match the following picture.

Machining Solids

Solid Drilling	? ×
Solid Drilling Solid Feature Detection Tool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Custom Basic or Advanced parameters Image: Solid	Prill Parameters Pre-drilling Hole detection parameters Minimum diameter 13.0 Maximum diameter 20.0 Include blind holes Include 'split'' holes Limit search to Tool Plane
Tip: The View # tells you the orientation of the hole. "1" means the hole is drilled from the top, "2" means from the front, and "3" from the back. See the online help or the Mastercam Quick Reference Card for a complete list of view numbers.	Re-detect on regeneration Sweep angle Ignore Minimum Maximum Angle Step 0.01
All holes remaining in the list will be processed. Delete any unwanted holes by selecting and pressing the [Delete] key or the right mouse "Delete" option.	Detect holes in solid Dependent operations list DK Cancel Help

- 5. Choose the **Tool Parameters** tab.
- 6. Select **Drill** for **Finish tool type**.
- 7. Select **Generate spot drill operation**. Your other values should match the following dialog box.

d Drilling	?
lid Feature Detection Tool Parameters Dept	hs, Group and Library Custom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling
Parameters Finish tool type Drill Create arcs on selected points 0.0 Suppress 'Accept closest matching tool' prompts	Chamfering with the spot drill None Add depth to spot drilling operation Make separate operation Chamfer size 0.0
Spot drilling operation Image: Constraint of the second	Comment

- 8. Choose the Depths, Group and Library tab.
- 9. Enter the name **Drill side holes** in the **Drill group and type** field.
- 10. Choose Sort by view.
- 11. Select the **Tip comp** check box. Your values should match the following picture.

Machining Solids

Solid Drilling	? ×
Solid Feature Detection Tool Parameters Depths, Group and Library Cu Image: Clearance 20.0 Absolute Incremental Image: Clearance 20.0 Absolute Incremental Image: Clearance 10.0 Absolute Incremental Image: Clearance 10.0 Absolute Incremental Image: Clearance 10.0 Absolute Incremental Image: Clearance 0.0 Image: Clearance Image: Clearance Image: Clearance 0.0 Image: Clearance Image: Clearance	Istom Drill Parameters Pre-drilling Drill group and type Drill side holes 3 axis Use are views No sorting or grouping Sort by view Group by view 5 axis Tool library METRICST52.TL9 Diameter match tol 0.0005
	<u>O</u> K <u>C</u> ancel <u>H</u> elp

- 12. Choose OK.
- 13. Choose **No** if you are prompted to sort the other operations. Mastercam generates the drill toolpaths and shows you the new operations as shown in the following picture.



- 14. Choose OK to close the Operations Manager.
- 15. Press [Alt + A] to save the file.

Congratulations! You have completed the Version 9 Mill/Design Tutorial. The final two chapters provide you with a glossary of terms and a list of the Mastercam shortcut keys. To learn more about Mastercam:

- See the online help to read more information for features you learned about while completing this tutorial.
- Contact your local Mastercam reseller.
- Visit CNC Software on the Web to keep up with the latest Mastercam developments and learn about other Mastercam products. Visit http://www.mastercam.com, or visit the Mastercam forum at http://www.emastercam.com.
- If you have any comments about this tutorial, please send them to **techdocs@mastercam.com**.

18 Glossary

2 ¹ / ₂ D (contour)	A toolpath consisting of multiple sections in which the depth can vary between sections but is constant within a section.
2D (contour or plane)	A toolpath or geometry that lies in a single plane.
3D (contour, plane or space)	A toolpath or geometry defined in X, Y, and Z axes simultaneously; consists of lines, arc, parametric splines, and NURBS splines.
4-axis	Toolpaths defined by X, Y, and Z locations, but with a tool axis with an additional degree of freedom, permitting the tool to be oriented parallel to an axis other than X, Y, or Z.
5-axis	Toolpaths defined by X, Y, and Z locations, but with a tool axis with two additional degrees of freedom, permitting the tool to be oriented parallel to an axis other than X, Y, or Z.
Α	
A axis	Axis of circular motion about the X axis; expressed in degrees.
absolute (coordinates, dimensioning, positioning)	Measured from a fixed reference point, usually 0,0,0.
across chain	When creating swept toolpaths, this is the profile to be swept along the curve.
AI	Extension for Adobe Illustrator files. This is a common vector graphics format.

along chain	When creating swept toolpaths, this is the curve along which the profile is swept.
along entity	A series of evenly spaced points along a line, arc, or spline.
arc	An open or closed planar curve in which all positions are at a fixed distance (radius) from the center of the curve. A circle is a 360-degree arc.
associativity (toolpath, dimensioning, and solids)	A relationship that links geometry with toolpath, tool, material, and parameter information to create a complete toolpath operation. Permits modifications to geometry or machining parameters to easily regenerate accurate, updated solid topology, dimensions and toolpaths. Also the relationship between dimensioning and its geometry.
attribute data	Attributes of entities: level, color, style, width.
AutoCursor	A feature that snaps the cursor to endpoints, midpoints, intersections, center points, quadrants or an arc, and the origin points in the vicinity of the cursor; automates and speeds point detection.
AutoHighlight	A feature that speeds and simplifies entity selection by dynamically highlighting the entity under the cursor before then entity is actually selected.
AutoSave	Feature that automatically saves current geometry and operations at a regular time interval.
В	
B axis	Axis of circular motion about the Y axis; expressed in degrees.
backplot	Preview a toolpath, either step-by-step or continuously.
batch processing	Method for generating nesting results for several nesting sessions at the same time.
bitmap	A graphic composed of small dots, or pixels. Bitmap files use the BMP or PCX extension, and are often produced by scanning. See also raster , vector .

blank	To reduce the complexity of the graphics window by temporarily making one or more entities invisible. They remain blanked until the user unblanks them. The blanked entities remain in the database and are saved with the file. See also hide .
blend	Smooth connection of surfaces.
bolt circle	Circular array of evenly spaced points defined by the center, radius, and a number of points on the circle.
boss	In general, a plateau of material from a surrounding cavity.
boundary	An edge, border, or limit; a curve or chain that indicates an edge.
bounding box	A feature used to approximate the limits of the stock required to machine a part.
branch (point)	Point in a chain where the endpoints of three or more entities meet.
browse	In Mastercam, to preview actual images of Mastercam files in a selected directory. Also to look at the file names in a directory.
С	
C axis	Axis of circular motion about the Z axis; expressed in degrees.
CAD	Acronym for computer-aided design.
CAD/CAM	Acronym for a combined CAD and CAM system.
CAM	Acronym for computer-aided manufacturing.
canned text	Post processor variables that can be associated with special commands, for example, an auto stop to check on a part during machining.
Cartesian	Coordinate system using X, Y, and Z values to locate a point in space.
CFG	Extension for Mastercam configuration files.

chain	Selection of one or more curves (lines, arcs, and/or splines) that have adjoining endpoints and often form boundaries; may be open or closed. Point entities can be chained using the point method for tool rapid moves; curves and points can be chained.
chain direction	The order of curve selection in a chain from start point to endpoint in an open chain; in a closed chain, may be clockwise or counterclockwise.
chain synchronization (Sync mode)	To break a chain into separate sections, each beginning and ending at a specified point, then match it with one or more other chains with the same number of synchronization points.
chaining tolerance	Maximum distance between two endpoints that can still be chained.
chamfer	Beveled or sloping edge that consists of one line that trims two intersecting lines. Each endpoint of the chamfer is positioned at a defined distance from the intersection of the two selected lines. In contour toolpaths, a chamfer is used to break sharp edges.
check surface	A surface or solid face that the system protects during toolpath generation on another surface.
C-Hook	Custom-made utility programs or add-ons (written in the C or C++ language) that run within Mastercam. C-Hooks that are automatically installed with Mastercam appear on menus with an asterisk (*) after the name. Other C-Hooks can be accessed by pressing [Alt + C].
chord height (tolerance)	In general, the amount of play allowed between a surface edge and the original geometry; determines the degree of precision with which edges of trimmed surfaces are created. See also edge tolerance . Also the tolerance with which Mastercam calculates surface shading independent of current display scale.
circle	A closed planar curve in which all positions are at a fixed distance (radius) from the center of the curve.

circle mill	A function that generates a toolpath to automatically machine full circles.
clearance plane or height	Height at which the tool moves between two separate machining operations.
climb milling	Cutting in which the tool rotates in a direction opposite the direction of travel along the side being cut. Generally produces a smoother surface finish than conventional milling. When the spindle is rotating clockwise, climb milling may be achieved by setting cutter compensation to the left. See also conventional milling .
closed chain	A chain whose start and end points are identical.
cluster	A set of parts that need to remain in a certain orientation to each other, such as a set of letters or numbers. The parts form a unit in which the position of the parts, relative to each other, stays the same.
CNC	Acronym for computer numerical control, which is a computer used to control machine tools.
CNCEDIT	File editor supplied with Mastercam that also provides some CNC and DNC capabilities.
collinear	Having the property of lying on the same line.
combine view	Combines all parallel views into a single view and moves arcs from separate parallel views to a single view.
communications (serial)	Transmission of information, one bit at a time over a single line, between a PC and any devices attached to it. See also communications parameters .
communications parameters	Parameters that control the transfer of information between a PC and devices attached to it. Parameters include format, port, baud rate, parity, data bits, stop bits, echo terminal emulation, strip carriage returns, strip line feeds, EOL (end of line) delay, and DOS communications mode. Communications is a File menu option (Communic).
compensation	See cutter compensation.

compensation direction	The orientation of the part with respect to the tool when cutter compensation is used. For example, the left direction means that if you are facing forward in the direction that the tool is moving, the tool will be to the left of the part.
compensation in computer	A setting which means that Mastercam computes the compensated positions and inserts them in the NC program. See also cutter compensation .
compensation in control	A setting which means that Mastercam does not calculate compensated positions, but instead inserts codes in the NC program (for example, G40/G41/G42) which signal the control to calculate them. See also cutter compensation .
composite curve	A chain of curves that meet endpoint to endpoint.
construction origin	Reference point (X0, Y0, Z0) for geometry creation; the same as the system origin unless reassigned by the user.
construction plane (Cplane)	Plane where geometry is created; may be different from the graphics view (Gview). Mastercam provides several standard construction planes: 3D, top, front, back, bottom, left and right side, isometric, and axonometric. Additional planes can be created.
context-sensitive help	Helpful information displayed on the screen that is relevant to the operation being performed.
contour	Path described by two or more axes. Also a method of analyzing selected boundaries or the boundary offset, thus simulating toolpath creation.
control points	Points that define a NURBS spline; usually do not lie on the spline.
conventional milling	Cutting in which the tool rotates in the same direction as the direction of travel along the side being cut. Selecting clockwise spindle rotation and cutter compensation to the right results in conventional milling. See also climb milling .

converter	A function that imports or exports files in different formats. Formats that can be translated include ASCII, CADL, DWG, DXF, IGES, NFL, Parasolid, SAT, STEP, STL, VDA, GEO, old GE3, as well as different versions of Mastercam.
Coons patch	A surface constructed by blending a grid of along curves and across curves. Named after Steven A. Coons. See also Coons surface .
Coons surface	A surface composed of one or more Coons patches.
coordinate	The combination of an axis and a number which represents a position along the axis, for example, X1. A pair of coordinates can represent a position in a plane, for example X1,Y2. Three coordinates can represent a position in 3-dimensional space, for example, X1,Y2,Z5.
copious data	An entity type that represents a collection of geometric forms (points and lines). Copious data originates in an IGES file. Mastercam can convert it to points and lines during translation. The Modify, Break, Cdata/line function can also be used to convert copious data to points and lines.
Cplane	See construction plane.
critical depths	Toolpath cut depths that must be machined even if depth increments must be adjusted to cut them.
cross-section	A section made by a plane cutting traversely through solids or surfaces. Also used in project toolpaths.
curvature (surface)	Measure of curving of a curve or surface.
curve	Line, arc, spline, or surface curve.
cut (toolpaths and solids)	When used with respect to toolpaths, refers to tool movement in the Z axis; do not confuse with pass.
	When used with respect to solids, a type of solid operation in which chains of curves are extruded, revolved, swept, or lofted as material is removed from an existing solid (target body).

cutter compensation	The process of offsetting a toolpath from the part geometry by an amount typically equal to the radius of the tool. See also compensation in computer and compensation in control .
cutter offset	Distance from the part surface to the axial tool center; tool radius.
cutter path	The path the center or tip of the tool follows over the part; the toolpath.
D	
data bits	A communications parameter that defines the number of bits used to represent a character; must be the same for both the PC and the CNC controller or peripheral device.
depth cuts	Z-axis cuts that the tool makes in a contour, pocket, face, circle mill, or surface toolpath to get to the final depth in set increments.
DF9	Mastercam default parameter file format for Version 9 (*.DF9); contains default values for all toolpath types.
dirty operation	A solid or toolpath operation that has been modified in some way; for example, its parameters or geometry input. The system marks dirty solids and operations with a red 'X' in the Solids Manager dialog box or Operations Manager. When an operation is dirty, it must be regenerated for the toolpath or geometry to match the parameters.
display cues	Features that clarify how geometry is oriented in the graphics window: XYZ axes marker, dynamic arrow, surface backside display.
display list	An internal feature that saves the display data for each entity; used by Mastercam to determine what entities are visible on the screen and to speed redraws, view changes, and other screen functions.
DNC	Acronym for direct numerical control or distributive numerical control. Direct numerical control uses a single computer to simultaneously control operation of a group of NC machines. Distributive numerical control uses a network of computers to coordinate operation of a group of CNC machine tools. Mastercam can be used in either situation.
-----------------	---
dongle	Another name for a SIM, which is required to run Mastercam. See also HASP .
DOS (shell)	Acronym for Disk Operating System. A DOS shell can be used execute MS-DOS commands while Mastercam is running.
double D	A shape composed of two line entities and two arc entities.
dpi	Dots per inch, a measure of graphic resolution.
drafting entity	An entity used in dimensioning: witness lines, leader lines, dimensions, cross hatches, labels, notes, copious data. See also geometric entity .
drive surface	A surface and/or solid body that undergoes a surface or multiaxis machining operation. See also check surface .
dynamic arrow	Cursor display that permits dynamic movement along geometry to indicate a position; changes size to indicate orientation of arrow relative to viewer. When large, the arrow points toward viewer. When small, the arrow points away.
E	
edge	A topological element of a solid model, which has an underlying curve.
edge profile	Defines the shape of the surface outer boundaries.
edge tolerance	The degree of precision with which edges of trimmed surfaces are created.
editor	An application used to modify files of certain types. See also MCEDIT, PFEDIT32, CNCEDIT .

ellipse	An oval-shaped curve, represented by a NURBS spline or collection of connected lines.
entity	A design building block. There are geometric entities (points, lines, arcs, splines, surface curves, surfaces, solids, copious data) and drafting entities (witness, lines, leader lines, dimensions, crosshatches, labels, notes).
entity association	The dependent relationship between one entity and a second entity or group of entities from which the first entity is generated.
EPS	Acronym for Encapsulated PostScript. This is a common vector graphics format.
F	
feed plane	Height that the tool moves to before changing from the rapid rate to the plunge rate to enter the part.
feed rate	Cutting tool speed of movement in the cutting direction; usually expressed in inches per minute.
file information	Displayed when an operator presses [F9]: file name and path, date and time of last file save, file size in bytes, current display scale, relative positions of construction, tool, and system origins and axes.
fillet	An arc tangent to two non-tangent curves; a rounded interior or exterior corner.
filter (Filter)	The process of eliminating unnecessary tool movements from a toolpath. Do not confuse with mask. When capitalized, an utility that performs this function.
finish	Precision surface machining.
fit screen	To display the visible geometry so as to fill as much of the graphics window as possible; a Mastercam function that is available from the right-click menu, by choosing $-$ from the toolbar, or by pressing [Alt + F1].
flat boundary	Used to create a flat, trimmed surface from one or more closed sets of curves.

flowline	Multiple curves along an entire surface in one constant parameter direction, that is, one of the directions in which the system creates the surface.
font	Text style. Mastercam fonts include Stick, Roman, European, Swiss, Hartford, Old English, Palatino, and Dayville. Windows® TrueType® fonts are also supported.
FPT	Feed per tooth.
free-form surface	A surface generated from arbitrarily shaped lines and curves; includes ruled, lofted, 2D swept, 3D swept, and Coons surfaces.
function	A single operation, for example Analyze, Set Norms.
function keys	Keyboard keys numbered [F1] through [F10]; may be assigned to functions, C-Hooks, and macros.
G	
Gcode	In general, an NC part program or the language used to create it; specifically, a code that, among other things, defines part program coordinates.
GE3	Mastercam file format for geometry files prior to version 7 (*.GE3); does not contain toolpath information.
geometric entity, geometry	Geometric entities include points, lines, arcs, splines, surface curves, surfaces, and solids. A part model consists of these entities. See also drafting entity .
geometric surface	Surface composed of constant geometric shapes: sphere, cones, cylinders, draft surfaces, and surfaces of revolution.
global parameters	Dimension attributes that are applied to all drafting entities; includes dimension symbols, coordinate formats, tolerances, text properties, witness and leader line attributes.
gouge	The result or act of a tool machining away material that should not have been removed.
grain direction	The noticeable surface direction on materials such as wood. In Nesting, you can set the grain direction for parts and sheets to be either horizontal or vertical.

graphics view (Gview)	The point of view of the displayed geometry; may be top, front, side, isometric, as well as defined dynamically by the operator.
graphics window	Workspace area in Mastercam where the geometry displays.
group	A collection of entities or operations that can be manipulated as a single entity. See also result .
GUI	Acronym for graphic user interface.
н	
hardcopy	Paper copy of the geometry visible in the graphics window.
HASP	Acronym for Hardware Against Software Piracy; refers to the type of SIM used by Mastercam 7.0 or later.
helix	A curve that is circular in the XY dimension and linear in the Z dimension. Mastercam lets you create helical entry and exit moves for many types of toolpaths.
hide	To make all entities except those selected temporarily invisible so as to simplify the graphics window. They remain invisible until unhidden as a group. Hidden entities are not saved with the file. See also blank .
highlight	To select with the cursor, with the result that the selected object changes color or reverses to white type on a dark background. See also AutoHighlight .
home position	Position where the tool returns for tool changes and at the end of the NC program.
HSS	High speed steel.
I	
icon	Small symbol used to simplify access to a program or function; sometimes also called a button.
IGES	Acronym for Initial Graphics Exchange Standard, an international neutral format; used to transfer geometry from one brand of CAD system to another.

incremental (coordinates, dimensioning, positioning)	Measured from the immediately preceding point.
infinite look ahead	In contour analysis, to search the entire boundary to find self- intersections based on the current offset distance and cutter compensation.
integer	A whole number such as 3, 50, or 764; used as a data type for counting or numbering.
J	
job	Contains a set of operations.
Job Setup	Machining job parameters, including stock setup, NCI configuration, material selection, and tool offsets.
jump height command	Allows a tool to be moved to a height above the clearance plane between points in a toolpath.
L	
level	A grouping used to organize geometry in Mastercam.
level report	A report of what entities exist on each level of a geometry file.
line	Straight entity between two endpoints.
line style	The appearance of a line; may be solid, hidden, center, phantom, or Zbreak.
linear array	A repeating toolpath along the X or Y axis of the construction plane at a specific distance.
linearization tolerance	Used when converting 3D arcs and 2D or 3D splines in the chained geometry from curves to lines; represents the maximum distance between an arc or spline and its linear approximation.
loft surface	A surface composed of smoothly blended curves created by fitting through a set of cross-sectional curves.

Μ	
macro	Group of commands and instructions that can be stored, recalled, and executed to perform a task; may be used to automate common or repetitive tasks.
Main Menu	Presents primary Mastercam functions: Analyze, Create, File, Modify, Xform, Delete, Screen, Exit, and in Mill and Lathe, Toolpaths, and NC Utilities.
mask	Restricts entity selection to certain types or levels. Do not confuse with filter.
Mastercam®	An integrated CAD/CAM software package created by CNC Software, Inc.
material library	Contains information on materials for machining that is used to set a base percentage for feed rates and spindle speeds; uses the MT9 file extension.
MC7	Format for a Mastercam file in Version 7 (*.MC7).
MC8	Format for a Mastercam file in Version 8 (*.MC8).
MC9	Format for a Mastercam file in Version 9 (*.MC9); contains geometry, toolpath parameters, material definition, NCI data, and tool information. See also job and operation .
MCEDIT	A Mastercam text editor; provides NC capabilities, file editing, and file manipulation capabilities. See also PFE32 and CNCEDIT .
merge	To combine another Mastercam file with the current geometry file. Some or all of one or more configuration files can also be combined.
MT9	Mastercam material library file format for Version 9.
MTL	Mastercam tool library file format for versions prior to Version 7 (*.MTL).
multiaxis	Using more than one axis; often refers to 4- or 5-axis toolpaths.

Ν	
NBT	File extension for a nesting batch file.
NC	Acronym for numerical control, a technique for controlling machine tools or processes by coded command instructions; also the file format output from Mastercam post processors.
NCI	Acronym for numerical control intermediate, the Mastercam intermediate toolpath file format. The post processor reads the NCI file to produce the NC file.
nesting	The process of fitting multiple copies of a part within a defined boundary (sheet).
nesting session	A file containing all of the sheet, part, group, and parameter settings from the Nesting dialog box. A nesting session is saved as an NST file.
node (spline)	Points in a parametric spline.
nonlinear	Not located on a single line.
normal (arrow)	Perpendicular to. There are two normal vectors for each planar chain of curves, which point in opposite directions.
	A normal arrow indicates the side of the selected surface on which the system creates the surface.
NPL	File extension for a nesting part library.
NSL	File extension for a nesting sheet or scrap library file.
NST	File extension for a nesting session file.
NURBS (spline)	Acronym for non-uniform rational b-spline; a two- or three- dimensional curve defined by knots and control points.
NURBS surface	A surface that is defined analogously to NURBS splines with the string of control points expanded in another direction resulting in a grid.
0	
obround	A shape composed of two straight line entities and two 180- degree arc entities.

offset	To displace an entity or chain by a distance in a perpendicular direction relative to the current construction plane. In a curve, displacement is perpendicular to the direction vector at every location on the curve.
offset surface	A surface created by offsetting an existing surface by a distance.
OP9	Mastercam operation library file format for Version 9.
open chain	A chain whose first and last endpoints are not identical, such as a line.
OpenGL®	An operating system-independent standard for displaying graphics.
operation (toolpaths and solids)	When used with respect to toolpaths, consists of geometry, toolpath (NCI file), tool definition, and parameters. A set of operations makes up a job or MC9 file. Each operation includes only one toolpath. See also job and MC9 .
	When used with respect to solids, the action or actions performed to create or modify a solid. Each operation, such as fillet or extrude, is listed separately in the history tree under the solid that it defines or modifies.
operation library	Contains default parameters for a specific toolpath; can be applied to current geometry; uses the OP9 file extension.
Operations Manager	Lists all operations in the current Mastercam file, including both associative and non-associative toolpaths, and offers options for managing them.
origin	Intersection point of coordinate axes: typically, the point X0Y0, or X0Y0Z0. See also system origin , construction origin , and tool origin .
Ρ	
pan	To move geometry within the graphics window. You can press the arrow keys, or right-click in the graphics window and choose Dynamic pan from the menu.
parallel views	Construction planes that exist in the same 2D plane but differ by rotation or position.

parametric spline	A 2D or 3D curve defined by a set of coefficients or nodes.
parametric surface	A surface composed of parametric splines in which each curve segment is expanded in another direction resulting in a patch.
part	The item to be machined or nested.
part drawing	Describes the shape and size of a part; usually includes part features, dimensions, tolerances, and surface roughness.
part feature	The distinctive shape and size to be produced in a part; can be 2D (flat surfaces, internal and external profiles, pockets, holes, etc.) or 3D (surfaces).
part library	In Nesting, a file containing part definitions so that they can be reused. A part library is saved as an NPL file.
pass	A tool movement in the X and Y axes. Do not confuse with cut.
patch	Area of a surface bounded by four segments of the generating curves.
peck	A tool move that occurs at the programmed feed rate as it feeds into and retracts out of the stock during a drill toolpath.
peck clearance	Depth that the tool rapids down to between peck movements during a drill toolpath.
PFE32	A Mastercam text editor; provides file editing and manipulation capabilities.
planar	Flat, lying within a single geometric plane.
plot	To output current graphics window to a plotter or file.
point (entity)	Entity that marks a position in 2D or 3D space but that has no dimension.
point (using the mouse)	To move the mouse until the mouse pointer on the screen rests on the item you want.
point data	Data consisting only of points.

polar (coordinates and dimension)	Coordinate system that uses a known point, length (radius), and angle to locate a point in space. The angle is calculated in a counterclockwise direction from the positive horizontal axis that runs through the known point in the current construction plane.
polygon	Irregular, closed shape with three or more straight sides. In Mastercam, can be created as a single NURBS spline or as a collection of individual lines.
port	A physical connection on a PC. Serial ports are used to connect to the CNC controller and are identified as COM1, COM2, etc.
post	Post processor. Also a post processor (PST) file.
post processor	A program that translates NCI data to a format usable by a machine, that is, to an NC part program or Gcode.
primitive	A surface or solid created using a predefined shape, such as a block or sphere. The parameters can be changed interactively, but it maintains its original shape. A primitive surface or solid is not defined by curve geometry. Mastercam primitives include cylinder, cone, block, extrusion (surfaces only), sphere, and torus.
PRM	Mastercam default parameter file format and file extension for versions prior to Version 7.
prompt area	A two- or four-line area at the bottom of the Mastercam interface used to display data or enter values with the keyboard.
PST	File format for a post processor customization file.
Q	
quadrant	A section of a plane in which quadrant 1 lies between 0 and 90 degrees, quadrant 2 lies between 90 and 180 degrees, quadrant 3 lies between 180 and 270 degrees, and quadrant 4 lies between 270 and 360 degrees.
R	
RAM	Acronym for random-access memory.

RAM-saver	An option that compacts the system database and frees up available RAM; can also perform an efficiency and integrity check on the database.
real number	A number that can be represented by digits in a numbering system with a fixed base, such as 0.5 or 25.4; used for storing measurements and other values to some limit of precision.
raster	A method of generating graphics in which images are stored as many small, independently controlled dots (pixels).
rectangle	A shape which consists of four straight lines and four right angles.
Rectangular nesting	A nesting method which treats each sheet and part as if it were contained in a rectangular bounding box.
redraw	To erase then redisplay visible geometry in the graphics window to clean up display remnants.
reference point	Point to which the tool moves before reentering a toolpath.
regenerate	In general, to recompute solids, drafting entities, or toolpaths when associated geometry or parameters have been changed. To rebuild the graphics window display list so as to improve the speed and results. The Regen path option in the Operations Manager recomputes a toolpath when the associated geometry or parameters have been modified.
relative (coordinates, dimensioning, and positioning)	Distance measured from specific point, not necessarily the zero or preceding point.
remachine	A machining operation used to clean up stock leftover from one or more previous operations. Remachining operations calculate the amount of leftover stock and use that as the starting point for the toolpath motions. See also restmill .
repaint	To erase then redisplay the visible geometry in the graphics window to clean up display remnants.
required pilot diameter	Minimum diameter necessary for the tool to enter the toolpath.

rest material	The leftover stock that forms the basis for a restmill toolpath. Mastercam computes this by looking at one or more operations that you select, or from the dimensions of a roughing tool that you supply. See also restmill .
restmill	A type of remachining toolpath used for roughing, in which the tool uses multiple depth cuts to remove stock leftover from one or previous operations. See also remachine , rest material .
result	The appearance of an entity group that has been transformed; may be selected for further transformation or translation. The default color of a result is purple.
retract amount	Distance that the drill retracts every time it makes a peck move during a drill toolpath.
retract height	The height to which the tool moves before the next tool pass.
revolved surface	A surface created by rotating a sectional shape around an axis or line.
right-click	To click on something using the right mouse button; displays alternate (right-click) menus.
right-click menu	A menu that opens when you right-click the mouse; gives quick access to many common features.
roll	To wrap a line, arc, or spline around a cylinder.
rough	To remove large amounts of material as rapidly as possible.
RPM	Revolutions per minute; a measure of spindle speed.
rubber-band	Temporary display of entities that will be created or modified; the display updates dynamically based on the cursor location to indicate the result with the cursor at that location.
ruled surface	A surface composed of linearly blended curves created by connecting straight lines between two or more lines or curves.
S	
save some	To save selected entities to an MC9 file. Toolpaths cannot be saved using this method.

scale	To increase or decrease the size of an entity by a factor relative to the construction origin or some other point. Also see scaleXYZ.
scaleXYZ	To increase or decrease the size of an entity independently in X, Y, and Z dimensions. Also see scale.
scrap	Material remaining from a sheet used in a previous nesting session.
scrap library	A file containing scrap definitions so that they can be reused. A scrap library is saved as an NSL file.
Screen, Configure	A menu that sets Mastercam's default values. Default configuration files are MILL9.CFG (English units) and MILL9M.CFG (metric units).
segment	A section of a spline between two nodes
selection cues	In Mastercam, functions such as AutoHighlight, AutoCursor, etc., which help you determine what entities you can select.
selection grid	A grid of reference points that the cursor can snap to during sketching.
setup sheet	A file created by Mastercam that contains NCI file information including operation, tool reference, total programming time, and text entered manually during programming; uses the SET extension.
SFM	Acronym for surface feet per minute.
shading	Representation of light striking a colored surface or solid object using gradated fill.
sheet	The closed boundary that defines the material on which nested parts are placed.
sheet library	A file containing sheet definitions so that they can be reused. A sheet library is saved as an NSL file.

shortcuts	In Mastercam, a way of gathering data from the graphics window. Allows you to modify data collected from the graphics window by entering values in the prompt area. Shortcuts appear in the prompt area as X, Y, Z, R(adius), D(iameter), L(ine length), S(distance between two points), and A(ngle).
SIM	Acronym for Software Interface Module; sometimes called a dongle; required to run Mastercam.
single D	A shape composed of one line entity and one arc entity.
sketch	To create geometry or select entities by identifying points in the graphics window using the cursor and mouse.
slice	The process of creating points at the intersection of lines, arcs, and splines with a plane and creating points where they intersect. Also the process of creating curves at the intersection of surfaces and solids with a plane and creating curves where they intersect.
solid	A geometric representation of a closed three-dimensional object. In Mastercam, a solid is a geometric entity that differs from other types of geometric entities such as lines, arcs, splines in that each solid is also a topological entity that occupies a region of space and that consists of one or more faces, which define the closed boundary of the solid.
spindle speed	Tool rotation speed (RPM)
spline	Smooth, free-form curve controlled by points including the condition of its endpoints; may be parametric or NURBS spline.
startup file	Configuration file, which contains Mastercam default values.
statistics (screen)	Tally of visible entities by type.
step angle	Controls the degree of rotation Nesting can use when fitting parts on a sheet. For example, a 90 degree step angle allows Nesting to use 90, 180, and 270 degree rotations. A smaller step angle increases the amount of time needed to generate the nesting results because Nesting makes more attempts at fitting the part more precisely.

stepdown	The distance that separates adjacent cuts in the Z axis on a surface toolpath.
stepover	The distance that separates adjacent cuts in the XY plane on a surface toolpath.
stretch	To place around geometry a window that intersects other geometry, then to translate the entities that are completely inside the window and also lengthen or shorten any lines that cross the window (by translating the endpoint that is inside the window).
style/width	Line style and width used to display lines, arcs, and splines.
subprogram	A section of the NCI file that repeats at different locations.
supplementary angle	An angle that when added to another angle produces an angle of 180 degrees.
surface	A representation of a part's skin by mathematical equations; a boundary defining an exterior face of a solid model.
surface curve	A curve entity type created directly on a surface through the Create Curve function.
surface memory allocation	The amount of RAM allocated for surface generation.
surface model	Defines a surface, including the edges of each surface.
surface normal	Vector perpendicular to tangent plane of surface.
surface projection	Creates points (or curves) by projecting selected points (or curves) onto selected surfaces.
surface shading	Color fill added to surfaces and solids to make them more easily visible; may be full-time or studio.
surface types	Mastercam supports three surface types based on mathematical generation methods: parametric, NURBS, and curve-generated. Surfaces may also be typed by components and application into loft, ruled, Coons, revolved, swept, draft, fillet, offset, trim/extend, and blend surfaces.

swept surface	Created by sweeping one or two curves or chains of curves (across curves) through a trajectory of one or two other curves or chains of curves (along curves); may be 2D or 3D. Also called a drag surface.
swept toolpath	Created by sweeping one chains of curves (the across chain) along a second chain (the along chain).
Sync	A function that breaks a chain into separate sections, each beginning and ending at a specified point, then matches it with one or more other chains with the same number of synchronization points.
system origin	Fixed reference point for all geometry creation (X0, Y0, Z0).
system tolerance	Maximum distance between two points that can still be considered coincident.
т	
tangent	Two curves whose slope is continuous in direction across their common endpoint.
tip comp	Cutter compensation calculated to the tool center or tip.
TL9	Mastercam tool library file format for Version 9.
tolerance	The precision with which an entity must fit another entity or process, or the maximum permissible deviation from a value; includes system, chaining, minimum arc length, curve minimum step size, curve maximum step size, curve chordal deviation, and maximum surface deviation tolerances. Tolerance dimension format is one of the global drafting parameters.
tool	The cutting or machining part, usually removable, of a lathe, planer, drill, or similar machine.

tool body	The body or bodies that are added to, removed from, or used to keep a common region with a selected target body during a Boolean operation. Once a solid is designated a tool body, it becomes part of the target body. In the Solids Manager dialog box, a tool body is listed under the solid and Boolean operation that it helps to define, and its icon is marked with the letter 'T'.
	Note: When you delete a Boolean operation, the system restores the operation's tool bodies as distinct, active solids. You can also duplicate a tool body to obtain an active copy of the solid.
tool center boundary	A closed set of curves that limits tool movement for a surface toolpath. The tool's center stays within the selected boundary.
tool library	Contains information on multiple mill and lathe tools, such as spindle speeds, plunge rates, and tool diameters; uses the TL9 file extension.
Tools Manager	A Mastercam function that provides a list of tools stored in the current job or in the current tool library; also allows management of tool libraries.
tool origin	The reference point (X0, Y0, Z0) in the tool plane (Tplane); the same as the system origin unless reassigned by the user.
tool plane (Tplane)	A 2D plane that represents the CNC machine's XY axis and origin; also called Tplane.
toolbar	Area on the screen that contains icons (buttons). The buttons are arranged in pages to which the user can scroll; may be moved and reassigned.
toolpath	Shows where a tool removes material from a part.
Tplane	See tool plane.
transform	To translate, mirror, rotate, scale, offset stretch, or roll geometry or toolpaths.
translate	To move or copy geometry or toolpaths to a new location without changing orientation. Also see transform.
trim	To act as a boundary for a entity or surface.

trim/extend surface	A surface created by trimming or extending existing surfaces.
trimmed surface	Surface bounded at a set of edges; can be created by applying any or a number of processes to untrimmed or trimmed surfaces, for example, projection of curves, intersection, or filleting with other surfaces.
trochoidal	A type of loop used in highspeed toolpaths in which a continuous loop is overlayed on top of a toolpath, and the tool moves along the path of the loop.
TrueShape nesting	A nesting method that fits parts on a sheet based on each part's actual shape and other parameters. It also allows access to sheet and part libraries and extended functionality beyond Rectangular nesting. TrueShape nesting increases the yield of parts from a sheet of material.
U	
undo	To reverse the last action performed.
unwrap	To unroll a rolled entity.
unzoom	To return to the previous display scale or to the original display size.
unzoom by 0.8	To return to the previous display scale or reduce the size of the displayed geometry to 80% of its original size.
V	
vector (1)	A graphics file format in which graphics are stored as lines and curves, instead of dots or pixels. Common file extensions are EPS and AI. See also bitmap, raster.
vector (2)	A directed line segment.
vertex	An endpoint of an edge.
view	Angle of observing the geometry – top, front, back, bottom, right side, left side, Cplane, isometric, or axonometric.
viewport	Area within the graphics window that displays the geometry.
W	
WCS	See work coordinate system.

window (selection)	A polygon sketched around entities to select them.
wireframe model	Three-dimensional object composed of separate lines joined to create a model; a complete set of edge and skin profiles that create a surface.
witness (dimension) lines	Thin solid lines that project from a dimensioned object to indicate the extent of the leader lines.
work coordinate system (WCS)	A coordinate system in which the orientation and origin are shifted. Provides a way to orient geometry in the best way to work on it.
work offset	A value that shifts the origin and coordinate system of the tool plane when creating toolpaths at different locations (for example, tombstone work).
X	
X axis	Horizontal axis relative to the construction origin; right of origin is positive; left of origin is negative. See also Cplane .
Xform	Abbreviation for transform, a function that can translate, mirror, rotate, scale, offset, stretch, and roll geometry.
XYZ axes marker	Indicates the axis orientation according to 3D space; displayed in the bottom left corner of the graphics window; updates to reflect the current graphics view (Gview).
Y	
Y axis	Vertical axis relative to the construction origin; above origin is positive; below origin is negative. See also Cplane .
Z	
Z axis	Perpendicular to the X and Y axis relative to the construction origin. See also Cplane .
Z depth	Current construction depth, which is the depth of the currently defined construction plane (Cplane) relative to the system origin.
zoom	To magnify a rectangular portion of the graphics window.

19 Mastercam Shortcut Keys

Alt + 0	Set Z depth for Cplane
Alt + 1	Set main color
Alt + 4	Choose Tplane
Alt + 5	Choose Cplane
Alt + 6	Choose Gview
Alt + A	AutoSave
Alt + B	Toolbar on/off
Alt + C	Run C-Hooks
Alt + D	Drafting global parameters
Alt + E	Hide/unhide geometry
Alt + F	Menu font
Alt + G	Selection grid parameters
Alt + H	Online help
Alt + J	Job setup
Alt + L	Set line style and width
Alt + N	View Manager
Alt + O	Operations Manager
Alt + P	Prompt area on/off
Alt + Q	Undo last operation
Alt + R	Edit last operation
Alt + S	Full-time shading on/off
Alt + T	In Toolpath menu, turn toolpath display on/off
Alt + U	Undo last action
Alt + V	Mastercam version number and SIM serial number
Alt + W	Viewport configuration

Alt + X	Set main color, level, line style and width from selected entity
Alt + Z	Level Manager
Alt + '	Create two-point circle
Alt + Tab	Switch between applications
Alt + -	With hidden entities, select additional entities to hide
Alt + =	Select entities to unhide
Alt + F1	Fit geometry to screen
Alt + F2	Unzoom by 0.8
Alt + F3	Cursor tracking on/off
Alt + F4	Exit Mastercam
Alt + F5	Delete using window selection
Alt + F7	Blank geometry
Alt + F8	System configuration
Alt + F9	Display all axes
F1	Zoom
F2	Unzoom
F3	Repaint
F4	Display the Analyze menu
F5	Display the Delete menu
F6	Display the File menu
F7	Display the Modify menu
F8	Display the Create menu
F9	Coordinate axes on/off

Chapter 19

F10	List all functions and choose one to execute
Tab / Shift + Tab	Navigate between controls in dialog boxes
Esc	System interrupt or menu backup
Page up	Zoom in by 5%
Page down	Zoom out by 5%
Arrow keys	Pan
Alt + Arrow keys	Rotate

In the Operations Manager:

Ctrl + A	Select all operations
Ctrl + C	Copy selected operations
Ctrl + V	Paste selected operations
Ctrl + X	Cut selected operations
Е	Expand or collapse all operations
G	Set parent group of selected operation as the active group
L	Toggle NCI locking on selected operations
Р	Toggle posting on selected operations
Т	Toggle toolpath display for selected operations